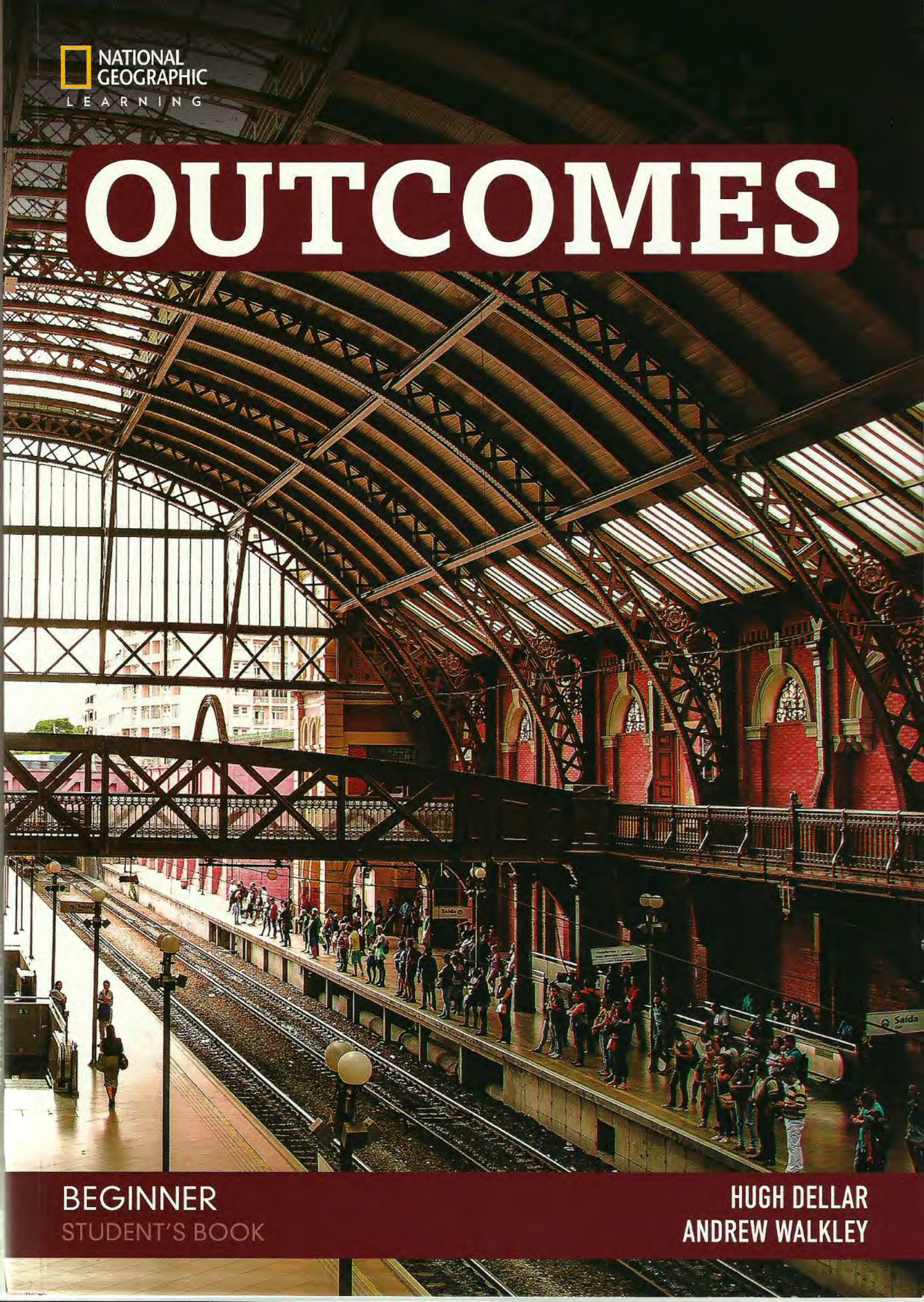


# OUTCOMES



BEGINNER  
STUDENT'S BOOK

HUGH DELLAR  
ANDREW WALKLEY



# IN THIS UNIT YOU LEARN HOW TO:

1



BE

- introduce yourself and other people
- understand simple questions with *be*
- answer questions with one or two words
- use numbers to say prices and times
- order in a coffee shop
- say the order is wrong

page 6

2



LIVE, WORK, EAT

- ask and say where you live
- ask about someone's job
- talk about people you know
- understand a menu
- say what you like / don't like
- answer a waiter and order food

page 14

VIDEO 1: People page 22 REVIEW 1: page 23

3



LOVE, WANT, NEED

- ask how things are
- respond to good and bad news
- use adjectives to describe things
- ask and talk about things people have
- ask someone to repeat

page 24

4



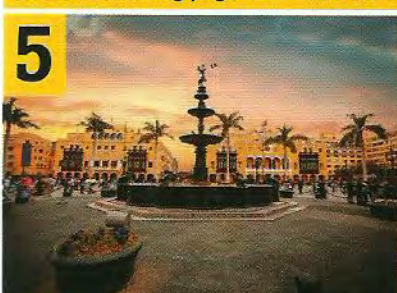
WHERE AND WHEN?

- ask about places and say what's there
- understand simple directions
- talk about your week
- ask for help / ask to do things in class

page 32

VIDEO 2: Morning page 40 REVIEW 2: page 41

5



GOING PLACES

- talk about good places to go
- say how to get to places
- talk about journeys
- buy train tickets
- ask about and say your plans
- say where and when to meet

page 42

6



AWAY FROM HOME

- say there's a problem
- say *don't worry* and *that's OK*
- ask how something was
- check in to a hotel
- talk about your stay
- ask what people did

page 50

VIDEO 3: Ancient land page 58 REVIEW 3: page 59



GRAMMAR	VOCABULARY	READING	LISTENING	DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 'm, 's, 're</li> <li>• Questions with <i>be</i></li> <li>• <i>his, her, our, their</i></li> <li>• <i>not</i></li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Numbers 1–12</li> <li>• People</li> <li>• Numbers 13–22</li> <li>• Question words</li> <li>• Times and prices</li> <li>• In a coffee shop</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Invitations</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Meeting people and introducing yourself</li> <li>• Ordering in a coffee shop</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Checking names</li> <li>• Ordering and serving drinks</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Present simple</li> <li>• Present simple questions: <i>do you</i></li> <li>• Present simple: <i>don't (do not)</i></li> <li>• Plural / no plural</li> <li>• <i>like / don't like</i></li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• My home</li> <li>• Jobs</li> <li>• Food and drinks</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The world in one city</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Where do you live?</li> <li>• Ordering in a restaurant</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>And you?</i></li> <li>• Ordering food</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Negatives with <i>be</i></li> <li>• Present simple: <i>doesn't</i></li> <li>• Present simple questions: <i>does</i></li> <li>• <i>a</i> and <i>any</i></li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Adjectives</li> <li>• <i>go, take, want</i></li> <li>• Things</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• What do people want?</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Asking how things are</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Responding to news</li> <li>• Asking for help in conversation</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Is there ...? / There's ...</i></li> <li>• Adverbs of frequency</li> <li>• <i>Can ...?</i></li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Places</li> <li>• Days and times of day</li> <li>• Classroom verbs</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The end of the working week</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Giving directions</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>called</i></li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Are there ...? / There are ...</i></li> <li>• Talking about plans: <i>I'm/We're going</i></li> <li>• Asking about plans: <i>going and doing</i></li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Getting there</li> <li>• Buying tickets</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Why I love train travel</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Talking about good places to go</li> <li>• Talking about plans</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>best</i></li> <li>• <i>Where are you going?</i></li> <li>• <i>I'll meet you</i></li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Past simple: common irregular verbs</li> <li>• Regular past simple endings</li> <li>• Past simple negatives</li> <li>• Past simple questions</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Problems</li> <li>• Hotels and checking in</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A holiday in Costa Rica</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Meeting a friend at the airport</li> <li>• A conversation in a hostel</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Don't worry / That's OK</i></li> </ul>

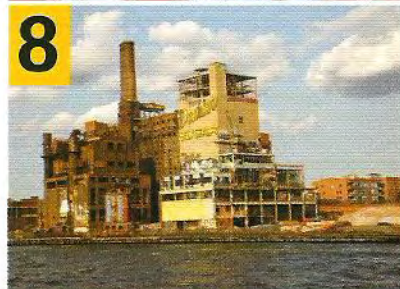




## 7 GOING OUT AND STAYING IN

page 60

- talk about activities you like
- say what you like doing or prefer
- talk about books, TV and music
- talk about people and things from other countries
- talk about clothes you want to buy
- ask and give opinions



## 8 HERE AND THERE

page 68

- talk about what people are doing
- explain why someone isn't there
- talk about houses and rooms
- ask about things you can't find
- talk about working at home

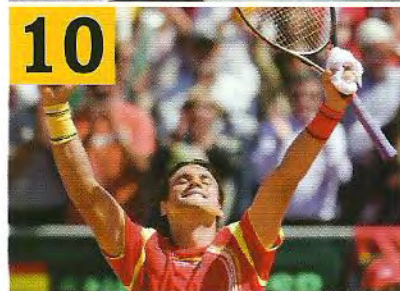
VIDEO 4: Bike riding in Utah page 76 REVIEW 4: page 77



## 9 HEALTHY AND HAPPY

page 78

- talk about health and problems
- ask people if they are better
- talk about what's important in a country or society
- talk about small and large quantities
- talk about how you know people
- ask about places people have been to



## 10 NEWS

page 86

- talk about the weather
- tell people about future plans and predictions
- say what's happening near you
- make plans with other people
- talk about some simple news stories
- ask questions about the news

VIDEO 5: A special skill page 94 REVIEW 5: page 95



## 11 LIFE AND HISTORY

page 96

- talk about celebrations and events
- invite people and reply
- talk about dates and when things happen
- talk about your life
- take part in a guided tour
- ask questions about people and places



## 12 THANK YOU AND GOODBYE

page 104

- tell someone a problem
- offer solutions and say thank you
- explain purpose
- talk about gifts
- tell people what to do
- say goodbye

VIDEO 6: Diwali page 112 REVIEW 6: page 113



GRAMMAR	VOCABULARY	READING	LISTENING	DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>like + -ing</i></li> <li>• Present continuous: <i>I'm</i> and <i>are you ... ?</i></li> <li>• <i>this/these, one/ones</i></li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Words for activities</li> <li>• Country adjectives</li> <li>• Buying clothes</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Are you a big reader?</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Talking about activities you like</li> <li>• Talking about what you are doing</li> <li>• Buying new clothes</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Me too</i> and <i>I prefer</i></li> <li>• Opinions</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Present continuous: all forms</li> <li>• Personal pronouns</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Collocations</li> <li>• In the house</li> <li>• Verbs and people</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Homeworkers</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Where are they?</li> <li>• Talking about something you lost</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Sending messages</li> <li>• <i>maybe</i></li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Time phrases for the past</li> <li>• Quantity</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Bad health and accidents</li> <li>• Country and society</li> <li>• Meeting and moving</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Iceland: possibly the best country in the world</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Talking about health and problems</li> <li>• Talking about how you know people</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Are you feeling better?</i></li> <li>• <i>Have you been ...?</i></li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Future: <i>am/are/is going</i></li> <li>• Past forms review</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Summer and winter</li> <li>• Entertainment</li> <li>• National and international news</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A year of fun in one weekend</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Talking about the weather</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>I think so / I don't think so</i></li> <li>• Deciding what to do</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Questions review</li> <li>• Explaining when: time phrases</li> <li>• Explaining why: <i>because</i> and <i>so</i></li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Months</li> <li>• Life events</li> <li>• History</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A changed life: John Bird</li> <li>• A very short history of Suwon Hwaseong</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Talking about future events and inviting people</li> <li>• Asking a tour guide questions</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Invitations</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>I'll</i></li> <li>• Explaining purpose: <i>for</i> or <i>to</i></li> <li>• Telling people to do things: imperatives</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Offering solutions</li> <li>• Leaving and saying goodbye</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• How to give better gifts</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Offering solutions</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Checking and thanking</li> </ul>









## IN THIS UNIT YOU LEARN HOW TO:

- introduce yourself and other people
- understand simple questions with *be*
- answer questions with one or two words
- use numbers to say prices and times
- order in a coffee shop
- say the order is wrong

### 1 1 Listen to the numbers.

- |         |         |           |
|---------|---------|-----------|
| 1 one   | 5 five  | 9 nine    |
| 2 two   | 6 six   | 10 ten    |
| 3 three | 7 seven | 11 eleven |
| 4 four  | 8 eight | 12 twelve |

### 2 1 Listen again. Repeat the numbers.

## WORDS FOR UNIT 1

### 3 Look at the words and photos.

- |                    |                      |
|--------------------|----------------------|
| 1 husband and wife | 7 that's right       |
| 2 what?            | 8 fresh orange juice |
| 3 Sorry!           | 9 have lunch         |
| 4 a baby boy       | 10 I don't know!     |
| 5 tea with milk    | 11 the number 19 bus |
| 6 food and drink   | 12 a big flat        |

### 4 2 Listen and repeat the words.

### 5 Work in pairs. Don't look at the words.

Student A: say the number.

Student B: say the word(s).







# NICE TO MEET YOU

## LISTENING

- 1 ▶ 3 Listen to the conversation.



Teacher: What's your name?

Student: Lara.

Teacher: Hi. I'm Greg.

Student: Nice to meet you.

Teacher: Yes. You too.

- 2 ▶ 4 Listen and repeat.

1 What's your name?

2 Nice to meet you.

- 3 Practise the conversation from Exercise 1 with other students. Say your names.

- 4 ▶ 5 Listen to Khalid introduce Lara and Dom.



Khalid: Lara, this is my friend Dom.

Lara: Hi. Nice to meet you.

Dom: Yes. You too.

- 5 Work in groups. Introduce other students.

## DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS

### Checking names

A: Who's she?

B: Aretha Franklin.



A: Who are they?

B: I don't know.



A: Who's he?

B: I don't know.



- 6 Look at the people in File 1 on page 144. Check the names.

- 7 Work in pairs. Say all the names in the class.

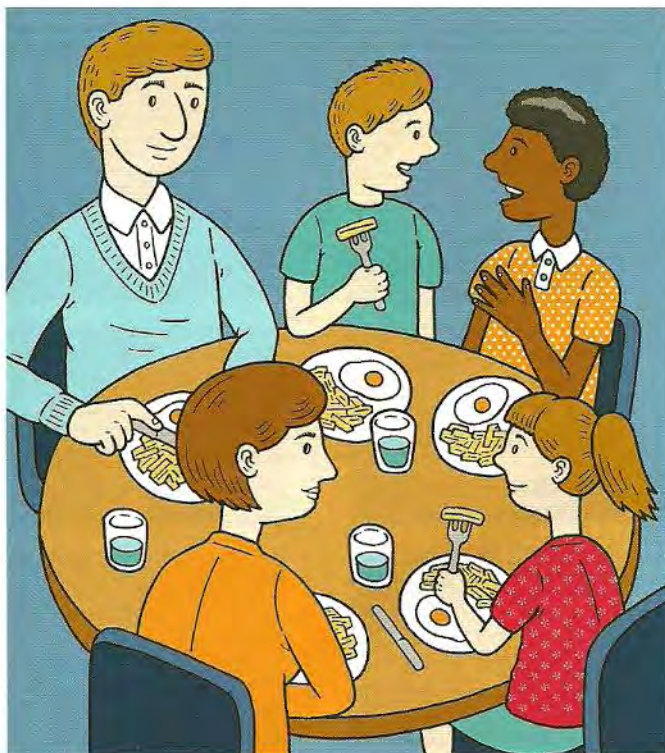
A: Lara, Khalid, ... Who's she?

B: I don't know. He's Joan. Who's he?



## VOCABULARY People

- 8 Look at the picture. Complete sentences 1–4 with the words from the box.



doctor	husband	son
friend	sister	teacher

- Bob: Tina is my wife. She's a doctor. This is my daughter, Poppy. And he is my \_\_\_\_\_, Connor.
- Tina: Bob is my \_\_\_\_\_. He's a teacher in an English school.
- Poppy: My mother is a \_\_\_\_\_ and my father is a \_\_\_\_\_. Connor is my big brother.
- Connor: Poppy's my \_\_\_\_\_. She's eight. Kevin is my best \_\_\_\_\_. We're in the same class at school.

- 9 6 Listen and check.

- 10 7 Listen and repeat the words.

my brother	my father	my mother	a teacher
my daughter	my friend	my sister	my wife
a doctor	my husband	my son	

- 11 Write the names of five people in your life.

Macu	Hugh
Matthew	Rebeca
Shirley	

- 12 Work in pairs. Give your names to your partner. Your partner asks questions.

A: Who is Macu?

B: She's my wife.

A: Who is Matthew?

B: He's my friend.

## GRAMMAR

'm, 's, 're

**am**

I'm Andrew. (= I am)

**is**

She's a doctor. (= She is)

He's my brother. (= He is)

My name's Ian (= My name is)

This is my friend, John.

**are**

You're Naomi, right? (= You are)

We're your teachers. (= We are)

They're in my class. (= They're)

- 13 Complete the sentences.

1 A: Who is Maria?

B: She \_\_\_\_\_ my wife.

2 A: Who is he?

B: Greg. He \_\_\_\_\_ our teacher.

3 A: Lara. This \_\_\_\_\_ my sister, Katia.

B: Hi. Nice to meet you.

4 A: You \_\_\_\_\_ Ana, right?

B: No. I \_\_\_\_\_ Zeynep. She \_\_\_\_\_ Ana!

A: Oh! Sorry!

5 A: Who are they?

B: \_\_\_\_\_'re my children!

A: Nice! What are their names?

B: My son is Cristiano and my daughter \_\_\_\_\_ Inés.

- 14 8 Listen and check the answers.

- 15 8 Listen again. Practise the conversations.

For more practice, see Exercises 1–4 on page 114.

## CONVERSATION PRACTICE

- 16 Work in pairs. Say or ask who the people are. Choose 1 or 2:

1 Show photos on your phone.

2 Look at the photos in File 1 on page 144. They are your family and friends!

9 For more practice, listen to three more examples.



# WHERE'S THE PARTY?

## REVIEW AND SPEAKING

- 1 Work in pairs. Say words for people.  
son, friend ...
- 2 Work in pairs. Read the conversations. Use your own names.  
A: You're *Khalid*, right?  
B: No. I'm *Ben*.  
A: Oh, sorry.  
A: You're *Joan*, right?  
B: Yes – and you're *Harry*.  
A: Yes. How are you?  
B: Good, thanks.  
A: Sorry. What's your name?  
B: *Ben*. And you?  
A: *Tina*. How are you?  
B: Fine, thanks.
- 3 Check the names of other people in the class.

## VOCABULARY Question words

- 8 ▶ 13 Look at the photos. Listen and repeat.



## VOCABULARY Numbers 13–22

- 4 ▶ 10 Listen and repeat the numbers.

13 thirteen	18 eighteen
14 fourteen	19 nineteen
15 fifteen	20 twenty
16 sixteen	21 twenty-one
17 seventeen	22 twenty-two

- 5 ▶ 11 Listen. Write the numbers.

1 \_\_\_\_\_ [?]  
 2 \_\_\_\_\_ [?]  
 3 \_\_\_\_\_ [?]  
 4 \_\_\_\_\_ [?]

- 6 Work in pairs. Look at Exercise 5 again. What's the next number?

A: What's the number?      A: What's the number?  
 B: It's *eighteen*.          B: I don't know.  
 A: Yes, that's right.

- 7 ▶ 12 Listen and check.

- 9 ▶ 14 Write the question words. Listen and check.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ is she? My wife.
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ is it? São Paulo in Brazil.
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ is it? Eight o'clock.
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ is it? Twenty-two dollars.
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ is it? Fifteen minutes.
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_ is she? She's thirteen.

- 10 ▶ 15 Listen to some questions and answers. Choose the answer you hear (a, b or c).

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1 How are you?<br>a Good.<br>b Fine, thanks.<br>c OK.                                | 5 Who's she?<br>a My mother.<br>b That's my daughter.<br>c My friend, Amani.       |
| 2 How long is the class?<br>a One hour.<br>b Three hours.<br>c Twenty minutes.       | 6 How much is lunch?<br>a Fourteen euros.<br>b Seven twenty.<br>c Sixteen dollars. |
| 3 How old are you?<br>a Thirteen.<br>b Eight.<br>c Nineteen. I'm twenty on Saturday! | 7 What time is it?<br>a Five.<br>b Three o'clock.<br>c Ten.                        |
| 4 Where are you from?<br>a New York.<br>b China.<br>c Here!                          | 8 What's your phone number?<br>a 71 33 68 922<br>b 022 193 548<br>c 069 455 781    |

**V** For more countries, see page 139.



GRAMMAR

Questions with *be*

*are*

A: How **are** you? B: I'm OK.  
A: Where **are** you from? B: Japan.  
A: **Are** you OK? B: Yes, thanks.

*is*

A: How much **is** it? B: Two pounds.  
A: How old **is** he? B: He's 18.  
A: Who **is** she? B: My teacher.  
A: **Is** it nice? B: Yes, it's good!

- 11 Complete the questions with *are* or *is*.
- 1 Where \_\_\_\_\_ you from?
  - 2 How \_\_\_\_\_ you?
  - 3 Where \_\_\_\_\_ he from?
  - 4 How long \_\_\_\_\_ the class?
  - 5 How old \_\_\_\_\_ you?
  - 6 What time \_\_\_\_\_ the party?
  - 7 How old \_\_\_\_\_ your son?
  - 8 \_\_\_\_\_ she nice?
  - 9 Who \_\_\_\_\_ he?
  - 10 How much \_\_\_\_\_ it?
- G** For more practice, see Exercises 1–4 on page 115.
- 12 **▶ 16** Listen and check. The questions are fast then slow.
- 13 Work in pairs. Practise the questions.

SPEAKING

- 14 Write answers to the questions. Use one or two words.
- What time is it?
  - How are you?
  - Where are you from?
  - How old are you?
  - How long is the coffee break?
- 15 Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions.

GRAMMAR

*his, her, our, their*

Tia's party = **her** party  
Pedro's daughter = **his** daughter  
Tom and Peter's flat = **their** flat  
Sara's and my son = **our** son

**G** For practice, see Exercises 1 and 2 on page 115.

READING

- 16 Read the invitations. Answer the questions.
- 1 What day is Tia's party? Friday 15
  - 2 What's Joe and Kate's phone number? Saturday 16
  - 3 Where's Sara and Pedro's party? Sunday 17
  - 4 Who is Santiago?
  - 5 How long is Tom and Peter's party?
  - 6 What number is Tom and Peter's flat?
- 17 Write five more questions about the parties.
- 1 How old is \_\_\_\_\_?  
How old is Tia? / How old is Joe and Kate's daughter?
  - 2 Where's \_\_\_\_\_?
  - 3 What time is \_\_\_\_\_?
  - 4 How long \_\_\_\_\_?
  - 5 \_\_\_\_\_?
- 18 Work in pairs. Ask and answer your questions from Exercise 17.

**▶ 17**

**INVITATION!**  
**OUR DAUGHTER TIA IS 18**

Come to her party at:  
Selale Restaurant  
25 Green Lanes  
Friday 15<sup>th</sup>  
9pm – 2am  
Joe and Kate's phone: 121 786 5539

**SARA AND PEDRO**  
**HAVE A NEW BABY BOY!**

Come to our party and meet Santiago  
(and his sister Rebeca!)

The Spanish Centre  
3 High Street

Saturday 16<sup>th</sup>  
12pm – 6pm  
Lunch at 2pm

Mobile: 07311 762 4683

**TOM AND PETER HAVE A NEW FLAT**

COME TO OUR PARTY AT  
Flat 6 Floor 3  
19 Old Street  
3pm – 8pm  
This Sunday (17<sup>th</sup>)  
email: tom@xmail.com





Coffee and cake

# TIME FOR COFFEE

## VOCABULARY Times and prices

1 ▶ 18 Listen and repeat the numbers.

20 twenty	60 sixty
21 twenty-one	65 sixty-five
30 thirty	70 seventy
32 thirty-two	76 seventy-six
40 forty	80 eighty
43 forty-three	87 eighty-seven
50 fifty	90 ninety
54 fifty-four	98 ninety-eight

### Times

10.25	ten twenty five	
2.00	two	two o'clock
16.30	four thirty	sixteen thirty

### Prices

£3.99	three ninety-nine	three pounds ninety-nine
€17.50	seventeen fifty	seventeen euros fifty

2 ▶ 19 Listen. Write the time or price.

- |                                 |                           |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 It's 3._____.                 | 5 A cappuccino is €_____. |
| 2 It's £15._____.               | 6 Lunch is at _____.      |
| 3 The class is at _____.        | 7 Sandwiches are \$_____. |
| 4 The coffee break is at _____. | 8 My bus is at _____.     |

3 Work in pairs. Remember the questions from Exercise 2. Ask and answer the questions.

## VOCABULARY In a coffee shop

4 ▶ 20 Listen and repeat words from a menu.

americano	espresso	medium	small
cake	large	orange juice	tea
cappuccino	latte	sandwich	water

5 ▶ 21 Listen and repeat the words in sentences.

6 Work in pairs. Ask the prices. Complete the menu.

Student A: look at the menu on this page.

Student B: look at the menu in File 3 on page 145.

A: How much is a medium cappuccino?

MENU			
	Large	Medium	Small
<b>Hot drinks</b>			
cappuccino	3.75	_____	2.90
latte	_____	3.40	_____
americano	_____	2.80	2.30
espresso	2.05	1.60	
tea	2.25	1.95	1.60
<b>Cold drinks</b>			
fresh orange juice	_____	3.95	3.45
Coke	2.15		
water	_____		
<b>Food</b>			
cakes	4.95		
sandwiches		_____	

7 Ask about prices.

How much is a cappuccino in your country?

How much is \_\_\_\_\_ in \_\_\_\_\_?



## DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS

### Ordering and serving drinks

A: *What would you like?*

B: *A large americano.*

A: *Americano. Anything else?*

B: *Yes – one medium orange juice.*

A: *OK. Anything else?*

B: *No, thanks.*

A: *OK. That's £7.05 (seven oh five).*

8 22 Listen to the conversation.

9 Have similar conversations. Use the menu on page 12.

## LISTENING

10 23 Listen to a man in a coffee shop. Tick (✓) the food and drink on the menu. How much is it?

11 24 Listen to part 2 of the conversation. What's the problem (a, b or c)?

- a It's not the right coffee.
- b It's not the right money.
- c It's not a large cappuccino.

## GRAMMAR

*not*

*It's **not** right.*

*It's **not** a black tea.*

*It's **not** fifty pounds.*

*It's medium – **not** large.*

*My tea – it's **not** hot!*

12 Add *not*.

1 A: What's the problem?

B: My tea – it's <sup>not</sup> right.

2 A: What's the problem?

B: My coffee – it's a cappuccino.

3 A: Yes, sir. Are you OK?

B: Sorry. It's a small tea – large.

4 A: Are you OK?

B: No. It's coffee cake – chocolate.

5 A: Is everything OK?

B: No. My tea's hot.

6 A: What's the problem?

B: It's right. It's 35 euros. It's 29.

13 25 Listen and check.

14 26 Listen and repeat the answers.

15 Have similar conversations. Use the pictures.

1



A: What's the problem?

B: My coffee, it's small – not large.

A: Sorry.

A: Are you OK?

B: It's not a large coffee.

A: Sorry.

2



3



4



5



For more practice, see Exercise 1 on page 116.

## SPEAKING

16 Have conversations. Take turns.

Student A: assistant

Student B: customer

Hi. How are you?

What would you like?

Anything else?

That's ....

Are you OK?

Oh, yes. Sorry. Here you are.

Here you are.

No, ...

Thanks.

## PRONUNCIATION AND REVIEW

17 27 Listen to the sentences. They are fast. Write the number.

This is my son, John.

This is my friend, Don.

Where are you from?

What's her name?

What time is the class?

What's your phone number?

18 28 Listen and check the answers. They are slow then fast.

19 Work in pairs. Say the sentences. Reply.

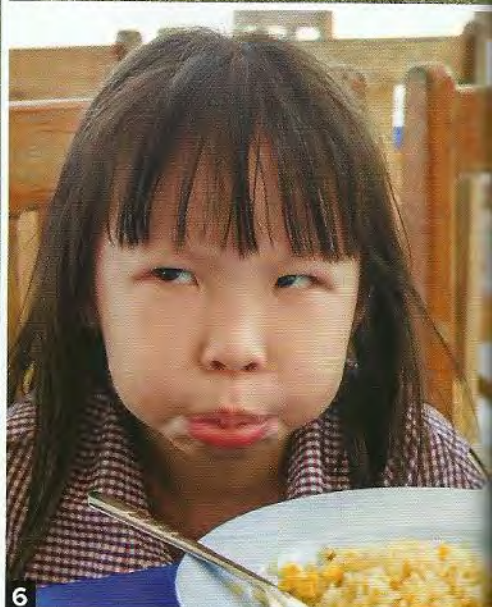
A: *This is my son, John.* B: *Hello. Nice to meet you.*



For more pronunciation, see Exercise 1 on page 116.



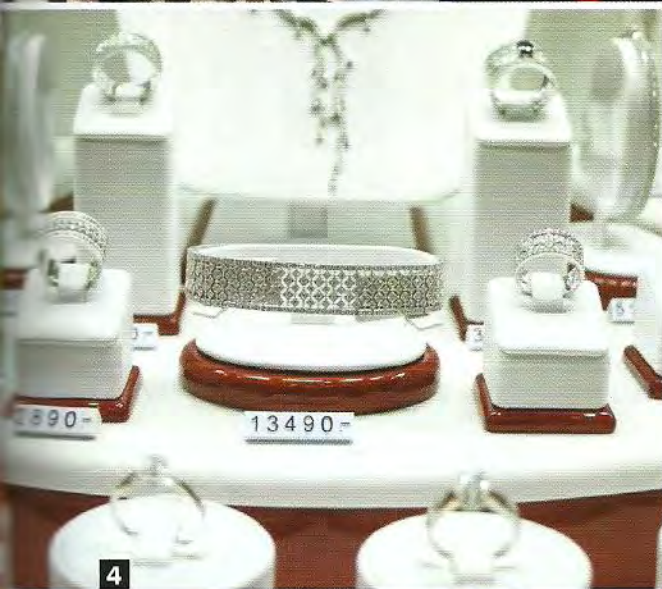
# 2 LIVE, WORK, EAT







3



4



11

## IN THIS UNIT YOU LEARN HOW TO:

- ask and say where you live
- ask about someone's job
- talk about people you know
- understand a menu
- say what you like / don't like
- answer a waiter and order food

## WORDS FOR UNIT 2

1 Look at the words and photos.

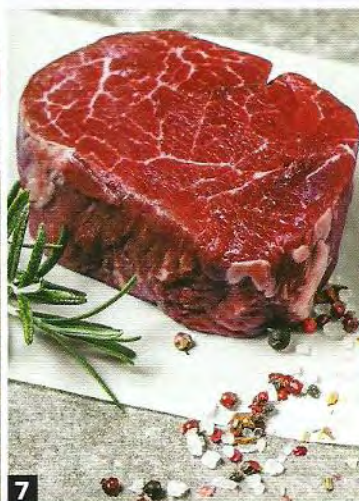
- |                     |                      |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| 1 a big city        | 7 some meat          |
| 2 near and far      | 8 a taxi driver      |
| 3 a lot of children | 9 fresh fruit        |
| 4 it's expensive    | 10 work in an office |
| 5 some nurses       | 11 walk in the park  |
| 6 I don't like it   | 12 a small village   |

2 29 Listen and repeat the words.

3 Work in pairs. Don't look at the words.

Student A: say the number.

Student B: say the word(s).



7



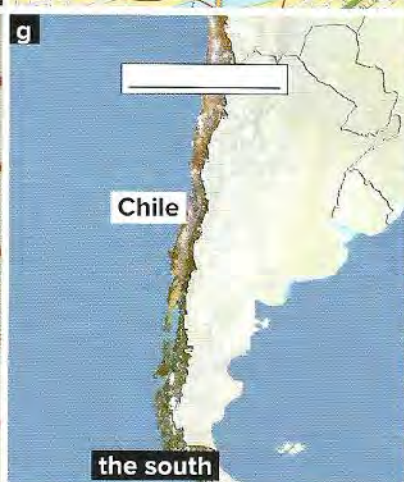
8



12



# WHERE DO YOU LIVE?



## LISTENING AND SPEAKING

### 1 ▶ 30 Listen to Freya and Adam.

F: Hi, you're Adam, right?

A: Yes. Sorry. What's your name?

F: Freya.

A: Oh yes. How are you?

F: Good. And you?

A: Yeah, I'm OK.

F: Where do you live?

A: Kings Heath. And you?

F: I live on New Road. Do you know it?

A: No. Is it near here?

F: Yes. I walk here. It takes ten minutes.

### 2 ▶ 31 Listen and repeat.

1 **Where** do you live?

2 Do you **know** it?

3 Is it **near here**?

4 It takes **ten minutes**.

### 3 Work in pairs. Practise the conversation from Exercise 1. Change the words in red.

## VOCABULARY My home

### 4 Write the words in the box with the correct photo.

a city flats the north a road a village

### 5 ▶ 32 Listen and repeat.

a **village** a **road** the **north**  
a **city** a **house** the **south**  
an **area** **flats** the **centre**

### 6 ▶ 33 Listen to Leo. Choose the correct word(s).

**My name's** Leo.

**I'm from** <sup>1</sup>Chile / Argentina.

**I live in a** <sup>2</sup>village / city called Temuco.

Temuco **is in an** area called Araucanía.

**It's in the** <sup>3</sup>north / south of Chile.

**I live in a** small <sup>4</sup>house / flat with my <sup>5</sup>son / daughter and <sup>6</sup>my wife / my dog.

**It's on** Los Leones road.

**It's near** <sup>7</sup>a big park / the university.

### 7 Make the sentences from Exercise 6 true for you. Tell a partner.

My name's ...

I'm from ...





## GRAMMAR

### Present simple

I	<b>live</b> near here.
You	<b>know</b> the city.
We	<b>like</b> Rio.
They	<b>walk</b> to the centre.
My mother and father	<b>have</b> a nice house.
He	<b>lives</b> near here.
She	<b>knows</b> the city.
My brother	<b>likes</b> Rio.
My friend Karen	<b>has</b> a nice flat.
It	<b>takes</b> ten minutes.

#### 8 Tell the class about your partner.

His name's Leo.

He's from Chile.

He lives in a city ...

**G** For more practice, see Exercise 1 on page 116.

#### 9 Write three sentences about friends and family. Use the verbs in the Grammar box or a dictionary.

My mother **lives** with me.

My friend Fei **has** a Ferrari.

My sister **knows** our teacher. They're friends.

#### 10 Work in pairs. Say your sentences.

## GRAMMAR

### Present simple questions: *do you*

Where **do you** live?

Who **do you** live with?

**Do you** live near here?

**Do you** know it?

#### 11 Put the words in the correct order. Make questions.

1 live / where / do / you / ?

2 with your brother / do / live / you / ?

3 who / you / live / with / do / ?

4 do / your / city / you / like / ?

5 you / know / my / name / do / ?

6 do / a / you / have / house / or / flat / a / ?

#### 12 **34** Listen and check the questions.

#### 13 **35** Listen and repeat the questions.

#### 14 Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions.

**G** For more practice, see Exercises 1–4 on page 117.

## DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS

### And you?

We use *And you?* to ask the same 'you-question'.

A: How are you?

B: Good, thanks. **And you?** (= How are you?)

A: I'm OK.

A: Do you like Tokyo?

B: Yes, it's great! **And you?** (= Do you like Tokyo?)

A: No, I don't like it. It's very big.

#### 15 Work in pairs. Take turns.

**Student A:** ask questions 1–6.

**Student B:** answer and ask *And you?*

**Student A:** answer.

1 How are you?

4 How old are you?

2 What's your name?

5 Do you have any brothers or sisters?

3 Where do you live?

6 Do you like grammar?

## CONVERSATION PRACTICE

#### 16 Complete the conversation.

and	it	live	name	to	takes
do	know	meet	on	you (x3)	your

A: Hi. Sorry, what's <sup>1</sup> your name ?

B: Ali. And you?

A: Maria. Nice <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ you.

B: You too.

A: So, Ali. Where <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ live?

B: Clayton. It's a small village. Do you know it?

A: No. Is it far?

B: It takes thirty minutes by car. <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_? Where do you live?

A: I <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ Havana Road.  
Do <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ it?

B: Yes. It's near here, right?

A: Yes. I walk here. <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_  
fifteen minutes.

#### 17 **36** Listen and check.

#### 18 Have similar conversations. Talk to other people in the class. Find someone who:

• lives near you.

• lives far from you.

Hi. Sorry, what's your name?

I'm \_\_\_\_\_.

And you?

Nice to meet you.

You too. Where do you live?

[Continue]

**37** For more practice, listen to another example.



# WHAT DO YOU DO?

## REVIEW AND SPEAKING

### 1 Choose one or two:

- Look at the photos on pages 14 and 15. Test each other.
- Study the conversation in Exercise 1, page 16. Close your book and practise the conversation.
- Ask other students *Who do you live with?*

## VOCABULARY Jobs

### 2 ▶ 38 Listen and repeat the words.

a bus driver	a nurse	a student	a waiter
a mum	retired	a teacher	work in an office

### 3 ▶ 39 Listen to eight conversations. What do they do? Write the letter of the photo.

1 a      4 \_\_\_\_\_      7 \_\_\_\_\_  
 2 \_\_\_\_\_      5 \_\_\_\_\_      8 \_\_\_\_\_  
 3 \_\_\_\_\_      6 \_\_\_\_\_

### 4 Work in pairs. Practise conversations. Student B close your book. Take turns.

Student A: ask *What do you do?*

Student B: say *I'm ... / I work in ...*

Student A: point to the correct photo.

## SPEAKING

### 5 Work in groups. What jobs do people you know do? Use the jobs from Exercise 2.

*My friend James is a ...*

*My brother works ...*

*My mother ....*

### 6 Say which jobs are:

a great. 😊

b good. 😊

c OK. 😊

## GRAMMAR

### Present simple: *don't (do not)*

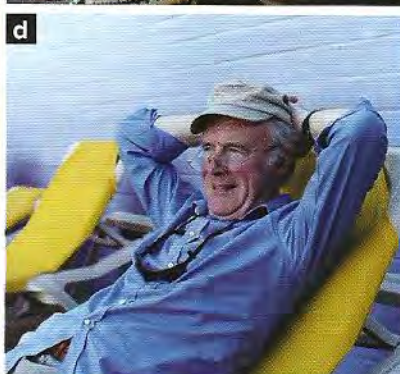
*I work 50 hours a week. I don't work. I'm retired.*

*I walk to school. I don't walk to school.*

*You like the job. You don't like the job.*

*We have a flat. We don't have a flat.*

*They have a lot of money. They don't have a lot of money.*





7 Make the sentences negative.

- |                                  |                              |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1 I work on Friday and Saturday. | 5 We have children.          |
| 2 I know.                        | 6 They live in the centre.   |
| 3 You live near here.            | 7 I walk to class.           |
| 4 I like it.                     | 8 I go to a language school. |

8 ▶ 40 Listen and repeat the negative sentences from Exercise 7.

**G** For more practice, see Exercises 1 and 2 on page 117.

9 Complete the sentences. Make them true for you. Use these verbs or others.

go know live work have like walk

- |                 |                 |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| • I don't _____ | • I don't _____ |
| • I don't _____ | • I'm not _____ |

10 Tell a partner your sentences.

## READING

11 Read about four people's jobs. Answer the questions.

- Where are the four people from?
- Which city do they all live in?

12 Read again. Write the names of the people.

- I'm a taxi driver. \_\_\_\_\_
- I'm a nurse. \_\_\_\_\_
- I'm a teacher. \_\_\_\_\_
- I'm a student. \_\_\_\_\_
- I like my job. \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_
- I live near my job. \_\_\_\_\_
- I work a lot of hours. \_\_\_\_\_

13 ▶ 42 Listen to Carlos and read again. Underline two things that are different.

14 ▶ 43 Listen to the three other people and read again. Underline the two things that are different for each person.

## GRAMMAR

### Plural / no plural

Singular	Plural	No plural
a doctor	The doctors <b>are</b> nice.	The money <b>is</b> good.
a job	I have three jobs.	I don't have time.
an hour	The hours <b>are</b> good.	I have some money.
a person	The people <b>are</b> nice.	I have a lot of work.
a child	I have two children.	

**G** For practice, see Exercises 1–3 on page 118.

15 ▶ 44 Listen to the conversation. Who is it?

16 Work in pairs. Have similar conversations. Take turns. Who is it?

**Student A:** ask the questions *What do you do? Do you like it? Why? / Why not?*

**Student B:** answer the questions. You are Ali, Jessica, Rasa or Carlos.

## WRITING AND SPEAKING

17 Change the words in **red** so the sentences are true for you. Use a dictionary to help you.

I'm a **teacher**. I work in a **university**. I like my job. The hours are **good**. The people are **nice**. The money's **good**.

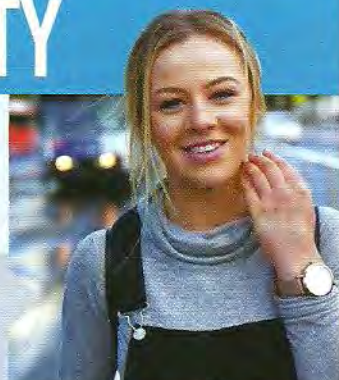
18 Ask other people in the class the questions from Exercise 16 about their real jobs.

▶ 41

# THE WORLD IN ONE CITY



My name's Carlos. I'm from Mexico, but now I live in London. I live in north London and I work in a university in the centre. It takes thirty minutes by train. The job's great. I like my students and the money's OK.



My name's Jessica. I'm from Australia, but I'm a nurse here in London. My job's OK, but I don't like the hospital. It's big and I don't live near it. It's an hour by car from my house. The other nurses are nice, but I don't like some doctors.



My name's Rasa. I'm from Lithuania, but now I live and work in Tooting – an area in south London. I work in a coffee shop. It's OK. I like the people and the hours are good for me. I work from nine to three and then I go to university.



My name's Ali. I'm from Turkey. I work for a taxi company. I don't like my job. London traffic is bad. The money is bad and I work a lot – 70 or 80 hours a week. I don't have time with my wife and two children.



# TABLE FOR TWO

## VOCABULARY Food and drinks

### 1 ▶ 45 Listen and repeat.

chicken drinks	fish fruit	ice cream juice	meat rice	salad
-------------------	---------------	--------------------	--------------	-------

### 2 Complete the menu on page 21 with the words from Exercise 1.

## GRAMMAR

### like / don't like

I love 😊

I like 😊

I don't like 😞

burgers.

chips.

oranges.

them.

meat.

coffee.

fish.

it.

plural

not plural

### 3 ▶ 46 Work in groups. Listen to the example.

A: I love meat.

B: I don't like it. I only eat fish or vegetables.

C: I like chicken, but I don't like bacon.

A: I love chips.

B: Me too! I love chips.

C: I don't like them.

### 4 Say the food and drinks you love / like / don't like. Find one thing you all:

- love.
- don't like.

**G** For more practice, see Exercise 1 on page 118.

## SPEAKING

### 5 Work in pairs. Look at the words in the box. Then read the examples.

more = ↑      less = ↓

A: Fruit juice?

A: Beef burger?

A: Salmon?

B: Three euros 50.

B: Fourteen euros.

B: Ten euros.

A: OK.

A: No. **Less.**

A: No. **More.**

B: Twelve euros.

### 6 It's your restaurant. Decide the prices. Have similar conversations to the examples in Exercise 5. Write the prices for each dish on page 21.

### 7 Change partner. Ask about prices. Say *It's expensive, It's OK or It's cheap.*

A: How much is your kebab?

B: Sixteen euros.

A: Oh. It's expensive.

B: Our kebab is good. Very nice!

## LISTENING

### 8 ▶ 47 Listen to a waiter and family. Tick (✓) the drinks the family orders on the menu.

### 9 ▶ 48 Listen. Tick (✓) the food they order.

### 10 ▶ 49 Listen. Complete the conversation with one word in each space.

A: Do you have a table for <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_?

B: Yes. Would you like a menu in <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_?

A: Please.

B: Would you like some drinks?

A: Yes. Two orange juices, a Coke and <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ water.

...

B: Are you ready to order?

A: Yes. A kebab with rice for <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_.

B: OK. And for <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_?

C: Chicken, please.

B: With <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ or chips?

C: Chips, please.

B: And you?

D: Prawns with rice.

B: Anything <sup>7</sup>\_\_\_\_\_? A salad?

C: How much is the tomato salad?

B: <sup>8</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ euros.

C: Oh. It's expensive. No, <sup>9</sup>\_\_\_\_\_.

B: So, that's one kebab and rice, one chicken and chips, and one prawns with rice.

## DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS

### Ordering food

A Coke and some water, **please.**

Chicken **for me** and a kebab for my son.

### 11 Work in threes. One person is the waiter. Ask and answer the questions.

- Would you like some drinks?
- Are you ready to order?
- What would you like?
- And you?



SPEAKING

- 12 Work in pairs. One person is the waiter. Practise the conversation. Change the information in red.
- A: Do you have a table for four?  
B: Yes. Would you like a menu in English?  
A: Please.  
B: Would you like some drinks?  
A: Yes, please. One coffee, two orange juices.
- 13 Work in groups of four. Close your books. Practise similar conversations to the one in Exercise 10. Choose your food and drink.

PRONUNCIATION AND REVIEW

- 14 ▶ 50 Listen to the sentences below. They are fast. Write the number.
- |                               |   |
|-------------------------------|---|
| Where do you live? _____      | They have a nice house. _____               |
| I don't know it. _____        | It's in the north. _____                    |
| I don't live near here. _____ | He's a student at university. _____         |
| I like it here. _____         | I don't like it. _____                      |
| It's a nice area. <u>1</u>    | She's a teacher in a language school. _____ |
- 15 ▶ 51 Listen and check the answers. They are slow then fast.
- 16 Practise saying the sentences.
- 17 Work in pairs. In one minute:
- write words for jobs and work.
  - write words for food.

**G** For more pronunciation, see Exercises 1 and 2 on page 118.



burger  
kebab  
2 \_\_\_\_\_ curry  
grilled chicken  
hot bacon sandwich

VEGETARIAN DISHES



cheese pizza      vegetable curry

MENU

3 \_\_\_\_\_ AND  
SEAFOOD



cod



salmon



prawns

- 8 \_\_\_\_\_
- water  
coffee  
Coke  
tea  
fresh orange 9 \_\_\_\_\_

SIDE DISHES



bread      green 5 \_\_\_\_\_  
chips      tomato salad  
4 \_\_\_\_\_      vegetables

DESSERTS

- 6 \_\_\_\_\_ (vanilla, chocolate, strawberry)  
chocolate or carrot cake  
fresh 7 \_\_\_\_\_





# VIDEO 1



## PEOPLE

**1** Look at the photo. Where are the people from? Use the words on page 139 to help you.

**2** **1** Watch the video. Number the sentences when you hear them.

- a This is us. People. Nice to meet you. \_\_\_\_\_
- b This is us. Lots of people from different countries. \_\_\_\_\_
- c We meet as a family. We talk. \_\_\_\_\_
- d We meet on the train. We talk. \_\_\_\_\_
- e We meet in the street. We talk. \_\_\_\_\_
- f We are friends. We do the same things. \_\_\_\_\_

**3** Are the sentences true (T) or false (F)?

- 1 The baby is a boy.
- 2 The baby is two years old.
- 3 The two old women are sisters.
- 4 The woman doesn't like the book.
- 5 The man knows the book.
- 6 The women want a coffee.
- 7 The boy is nine.

**4** **1** Watch the video again and check.

**5** Complete the sentences with one word in each space.

- 1 We are friends. \_\_\_\_\_ do the same things.
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_'s a boy. \_\_\_\_\_ name's Josh.
- 3 Her daughter \_\_\_\_\_ a son. \_\_\_\_\_'s two.
- 4 The book. Do you like \_\_\_\_\_?
- 5 Would \_\_\_\_\_ like a break?
- 6 You' \_\_\_\_\_ ten!

**6** Work in groups. Answer the questions.

- Do you have any friends from another country? Where are they from?
- What times do you have a break in the day? How long are your breaks?

## SPEAKING

**7** Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about people. Use the photos on page 18 or page 144 or photos of people on your phone. Change the words in **red**.

- |                      |                                 |
|----------------------|---------------------------------|
| Who's she?           | My sister.                      |
| What's her name?     | Juana.                          |
| What does she do?    | She's a nurse.                  |
| How old is she?      | 23.                             |
| Where does she live? | Mexico City. She lives with me. |



# REVIEW 1

## GRAMMAR

### 1 Choose the correct word(s).

- How old *is / are* you?
- What *is / are* her name?
- Where *are you / you are / do you* live?
- She *has / have* a new car.
- We have three *childs / children* – two *son / sons* and a daughter.
- Do you know Andrew? This is *his / their / our* wife.
- Who *are / do / is* you live with?
- Where *is / are / do they* from?
- We *not / don't / are not* live here.
- I'm not / I don't / I not* like meat.

### 2 Rewrite the sentences as negatives (–) or questions (?).

- It's expensive. (–)
- His mother is retired. (?)
- They have a lot of money. (–)
- You work near here. (?)
- I have a sister. (–)
- The teachers are nice. (?)
- I know her brother. (–)
- He likes English. (?)

### 3 Complete the sentences with one word in each space. Contractions (*I'm, don't, etc.*) are one word.

- I like tea, but I \_\_\_\_\_ like coffee.
- It's my husband's birthday on Saturday. Come to \_\_\_\_\_ party.
- I walk to university. I \_\_\_\_\_ have a car.
- Excuse me. This is \_\_\_\_\_ a cappuccino. It's a latte.
- I like my job. The hours \_\_\_\_\_ OK and the money \_\_\_\_\_ very good.
- It's not far. It \_\_\_\_\_ ten minutes by car.
- I don't have time today. I have a \_\_\_\_\_ of work.
- Where \_\_\_\_\_ you live? \_\_\_\_\_ it near here?

### 4 Write full questions to complete the conversation. Use the words in brackets.

- A: <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_? (name)  
 B: Isabella.  
 A: And <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_? (from)  
 B: Cuzco. In Peru.  
 A: <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_? (old)  
 B: Twenty-seven.  
 A: <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_? (do)  
 B: I'm a doctor. I work in a hospital in the city centre.  
 A: <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_? (job)  
 B: Yes, I do. I love it. I like the people and the money is OK.

## VOCABULARY

### 5 Match the verbs in the box with the correct groups of words (1–7).

have know like live take walk work

- \_\_\_\_\_ in an office / forty hours a week
- \_\_\_\_\_ ten minutes / twenty minutes by train
- \_\_\_\_\_ in a village / near here
- \_\_\_\_\_ a big house / children
- \_\_\_\_\_ in the park / to school
- \_\_\_\_\_ my job / fish and chips
- \_\_\_\_\_ your name / the area

### 6 Put the words into three groups: food, drinks or jobs.

americano	fish	salad	teacher
chicken	nurse	sandwich	waiter
Coke	orange juice	taxi driver	water
doctor	rice	tea	

### 7 Replace the words in italics with their opposites from the box.

brother	daughter	small	wife
cheap	father	south	

- This is my *husband*. 4 This is my *son*.  
*This is my wife*. 5 It's in the *north*.
- This is my *sister*. 6 It's very *expensive*.
- This is my *mother*. 7 It's a *big* town.

### 8 Complete the text with the words from the box.

brother	flat	nice	park
city	name	north	student

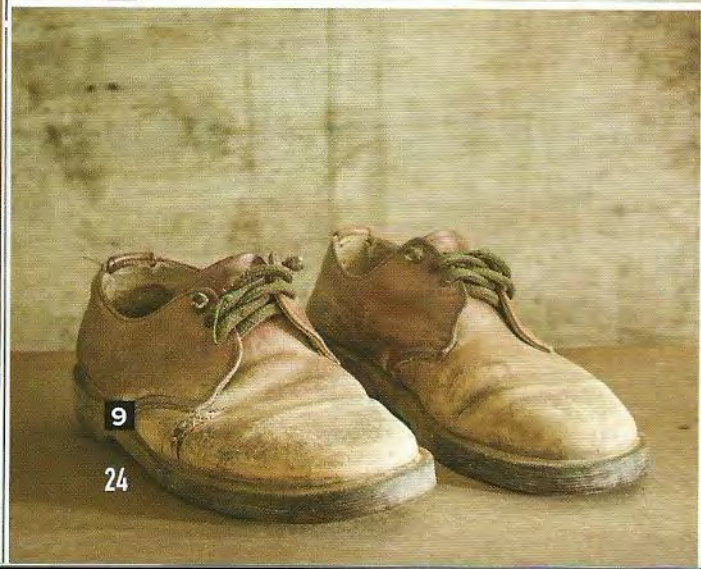
My <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ is Maryam and I'm a <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. I'm from Oman. I live in a small <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ called Khasab. It's in the <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ of Oman. I live in a big <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ with my mother, father and <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. We live near a <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. It's very <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.

### 9 Match the questions (1–8) with the answers (a–h).

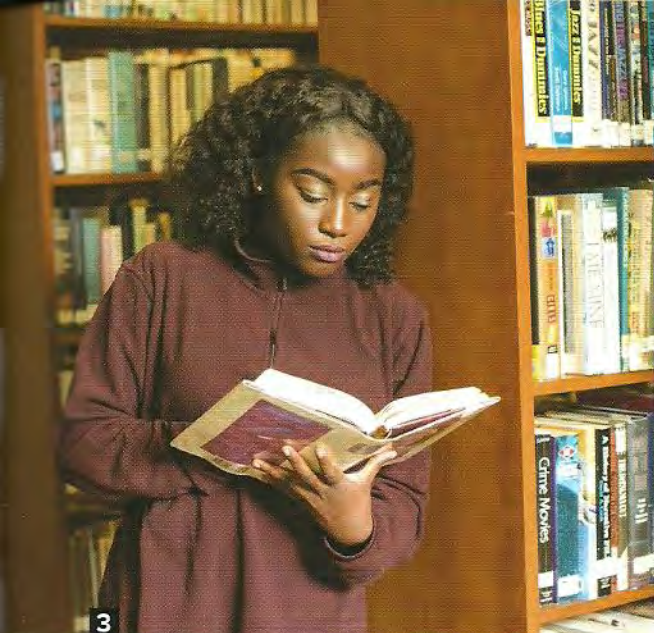
- |                             |                     |
|-----------------------------|---------------------|
| 1 Who's he?                 | a Twenty-three.     |
| 2 Where do you live?        | b Ninety minutes.   |
| 3 How long is the class?    | c 07781-336-454     |
| 4 What time is it?          | d My father.        |
| 5 How old is she?           | e Two euros twenty. |
| 6 What day is the party?    | f Eight thirty.     |
| 7 How much is it?           | g In Rome.          |
| 8 What's your phone number? | h Friday.           |



# 3 LOVE, WANT, NEED







3


## IN THIS UNIT YOU LEARN HOW TO:

- ask how things are
- respond to good and bad news
- use adjectives to describe things
- ask and talk about things people have
- ask someone to repeat

## WORDS FOR UNIT 3

1 Look at the words and photos.

- |                     |                           |
|---------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 a hotel room      | 7 go on holiday           |
| 2 he needs a shower | 8 get married             |
| 3 read a book       | 9 old shoes               |
| 4 buy clothes       | 10 very hot               |
| 5 weather           | 11 he's not well          |
| 6 a shower          | 12 take the train to work |

2  52 Listen and repeat the words.

3 Work in pairs. Don't look at the words.

Student A: say the number.

Student B: say the word(s).



7



8



11



12





## HOW IS IT?

### SPEAKING

- 1 ▶ 53 Listen to two conversations.

1

A: Hi. How are you?

B: Good, thanks. And you?

A: Yeah – not bad!

2

A: Hi. How are you?

B: Very good. And you?

A: I'm not very well.

B: Oh, I'm sorry.

- 2 Work in pairs. Practise the conversations from Exercise 1.

- 3 Ask other students in the class *How are you?*

- 5 Say two or three adjectives for each photo.

- 6 Don't look at the adjectives in Exercise 4.  
1) Complete sentences 1–6 with an adjective.  
2) Complete the sentences with a different adjective.

1 It's a/an \_\_\_\_\_ flat.

2 It's a/an \_\_\_\_\_ class.

3 It's a/an \_\_\_\_\_ hotel.

4 It's \_\_\_\_\_ weather.

5 They're \_\_\_\_\_ clothes.

6 I'm \_\_\_\_\_.

#### a / an

a nice flat

an old flat

a big hotel

an expensive hotel

- 7 Compare your answers.

- 8 Write the correct numbers.

-15°C	98	78	0°C
-------	----	----	-----

1 It's cold. \_\_\_\_\_

2 It's very cold. \_\_\_\_\_

3 He's old. \_\_\_\_\_

4 She's very old. \_\_\_\_\_

### VOCABULARY Adjectives

- 4 ▶ 54 Listen and repeat the adjectives. Tick (✓) the words you know.

bad	expensive	hungry	old
big	good	married	small
cold	great	new	tired
difficult	hot	nice	well



- 9 Work in groups. Say things you love / like / don't like.

A: I love very hot weather.

B: Me too.

C: I don't like very hot weather.

A: I like big cities.

B: I don't like them. I like small cities.

C: Me too.

## LISTENING

- 10 Where are the people? Match the questions (1–4) with the places (a–d).

1 How's the class? a in a hotel

2 How's the chicken? b in a restaurant

3 How's your room? c in a school

4 How's the weather? d on holiday / in a different country

- 11 ▶ 55 Listen. What question from Exercise 10 do they ask in each conversation?

Conversation 1: \_\_\_\_\_

Conversation 2: \_\_\_\_\_

Conversation 3: \_\_\_\_\_

Conversation 4: \_\_\_\_\_

- 12 ▶ 55 Listen again. Choose the correct word(s).

1 A: It's *not very* / *very* big.

B: The same. And it's *cold* / *old*!

2 English is *difficult* / *good*.

3 A: How's the fish?

B: It's *great* / *not very nice*.

4 A: It's *cold* / *hot*.

B: Oh no! It's normally *near* / *hot* there.

## GRAMMAR

### Negatives with *be*

*'m not*

*I'm not well.*

*'re not*

*We're not tired.*

*They're not in my class.*

*You're not English, right?*

*'s not*

*He's not married.*

*She's not here.*

*It's not very difficult.*

- 13 Make the sentences negative.

1 She's my friend.

2 It's a big city.

3 We're married.

4 I'm very hungry.

5 They're from here.

6 The rooms are very expensive.

7 My job's very good.  
The money's great.

- 14 ▶ 56 Listen and check. The sentences are fast then slow.

- 15 Work in pairs. Practise the sentences.

- 16 Work in pairs. Say true sentences about you and where you live.

*I'm not married.*

*My flat's not very big.*

*Moscow is very expensive.*



For more practice, see Exercises 1 and 2 on page 119.

## DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS

### Responding to news

For good news

A: *The teacher's nice.*

B: *Oh, good.*

For bad news

A: *I'm not very well.*

B: *I'm sorry.*

- 17 ▶ 57 Listen and repeat the phrases from the box.

- 18 Write *Oh, good* or *I'm sorry* after each sentence.

1 It's not very expensive. \_\_\_\_\_

2 My room is nice and big. \_\_\_\_\_

3 It's very cold in my flat. \_\_\_\_\_

4 The weather here is great. \_\_\_\_\_

5 I love my English class. \_\_\_\_\_

6 The fish is very good. \_\_\_\_\_

7 My father's not very well. \_\_\_\_\_

8 I don't like my new job. The hours are very bad.  
\_\_\_\_\_

- 19 ▶ 58 Listen and answer.

- 20 Work in pairs. Take turns.

Student A: say a sentence from Exercise 18.

Student B: say *Oh, good* or *I'm sorry*.

## CONVERSATION PRACTICE

- 21 Write questions starting with *How's ...* ?

1 in a hotel

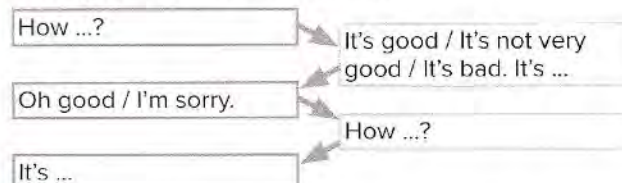
4 in a different country

2 in a restaurant

5 about a new flat/  
house

3 at school

- 22 Have your own conversations.



59 For more practice, listen to another example.



# THINGS I WANT IN LIFE

## REVIEW

### 1 Choose two:

- Write or say all the adjectives you know.
- Add eight different words to *I'm ...*  
*I'm cold.*  
*I'm 16.*
- Say five things about you and your things with *not*.  
*I don't live near here.*  
*My flat is not expensive.*

## VOCABULARY *go, take, want*

### 2 Look at the sentences. Then match the verbs in the box with the groups of words 1–3.

- He / She takes the train to work.
- He / She wants a new car.
- He / She goes to the gym every day.

go	take	want	.
----	------	------	---

- \_\_\_\_\_ the bus  
a photo  
a shower  
a long time
- \_\_\_\_\_ to the park every day  
to the doctor  
on holiday  
shopping
- \_\_\_\_\_ a coffee  
a new house  
to go to China  
to buy some clothes

### 3 ▶ 60 Listen to the phrases and repeat them.

### 4 Work in pairs. Take turns.

Student A: say a verb. *go*

Student B: don't look. Say a phrase. *go shopping*

## GRAMMAR

### Present simple: *doesn't*

- wants* → *She **doesn't want** to go.*  
*takes* → *It **doesn't take** a long time.*  
*likes* → *He **doesn't like** coffee*  
*goes* → *The bus **doesn't go** to the centre.*

### 5 Complete the sentences with the verbs.

- My sister has two children. (have)
- He \_\_\_\_\_ lots of money. (not have)
- The number 30 bus \_\_\_\_\_ near my house. (go)
- He \_\_\_\_\_ to university. (not go)
- He \_\_\_\_\_ his job. (like)
- My mother \_\_\_\_\_ big cities. (not like)
- My dad \_\_\_\_\_ the bus to work. He walks. (not take)
- My friend, Marc, \_\_\_\_\_ for Google. He \_\_\_\_\_ in San Francisco. (work / live)

### 6 Make six negative sentences about people you know. Use these verbs.

go	have	live	take	want	work
----	------	------	------	------	------

### 7 Work in pairs. Say your sentences.

**G** For more practice, see Exercise 1 on page 119.

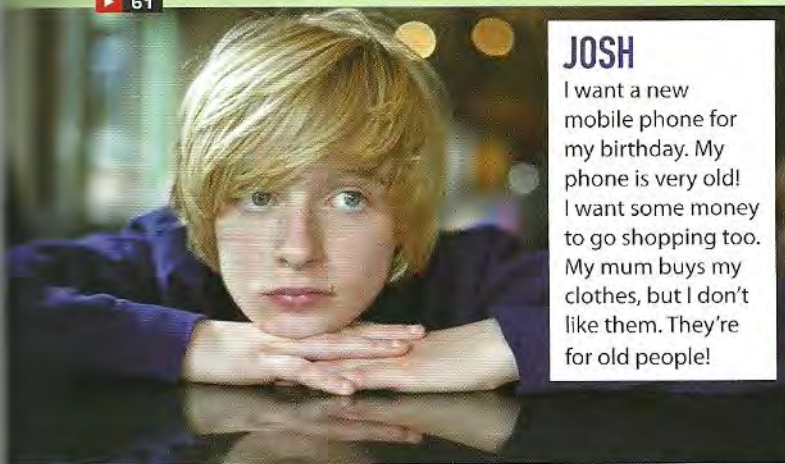




# WHAT DO PEOPLE WANT?

## HERE ARE FIVE THINGS PEOPLE SAY THEY WANT.

- 1 I want to be happy.
- 2 I want to be well and live a long life.
- 3 I want more free time.
- 4 I want more money.
- 5 I want a good job.



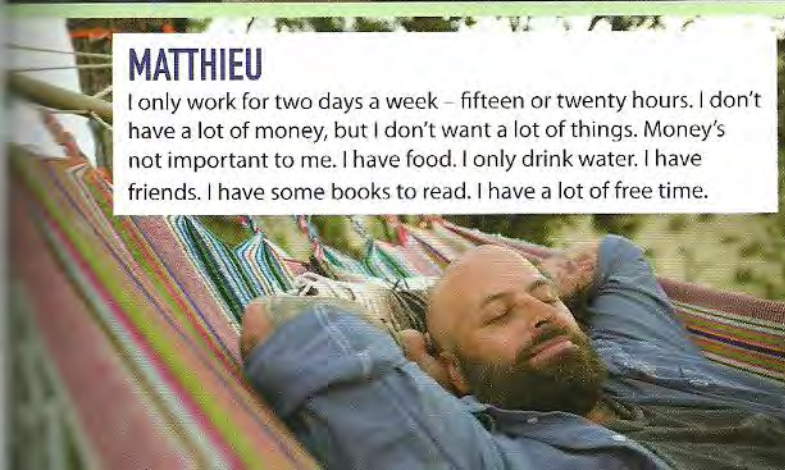
### JOSH

I want a new mobile phone for my birthday. My phone is very old! I want some money to go shopping too. My mum buys my clothes, but I don't like them. They're for old people!



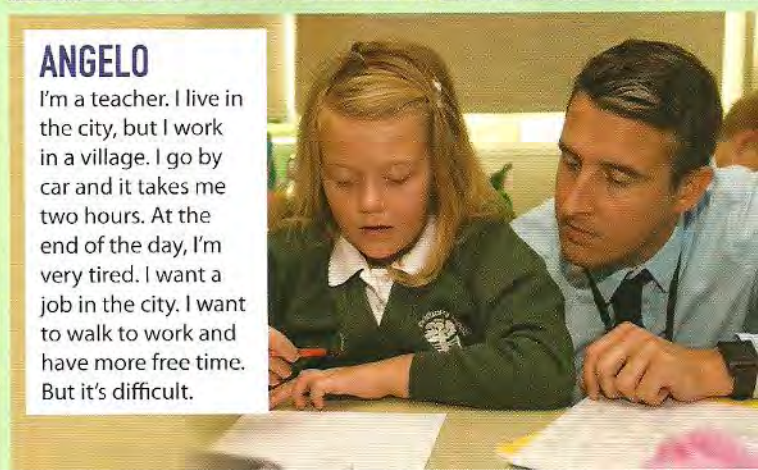
### BETTINA

I have a good job. I love my husband. We have a big house and a nice car. We go on holiday to nice places. It's all great, but we don't have children and now we want a family.



### MATTHIEU

I only work for two days a week – fifteen or twenty hours. I don't have a lot of money, but I don't want a lot of things. Money's not important to me. I have food. I only drink water. I have friends. I have some books to read. I have a lot of free time.



### ANGELO

I'm a teacher. I live in the city, but I work in a village. I go by car and it takes me two hours. At the end of the day, I'm very tired. I want a job in the city. I want to walk to work and have more free time. But it's difficult.

## READING

- 8 Read five things people want. Tick (✓) the things you want.
- 9 Read about the four people. Answer the questions.
  - 1 What does Josh want for his birthday?
  - 2 Does Josh like his clothes?
  - 3 Is Bettina married?
  - 4 Does Bettina have a daughter?
  - 5 Does Matthieu work a lot?
  - 6 Does Matthieu want more money?
  - 7 What does Angelo do?
  - 8 How long does it take Angelo to get to work?

## GRAMMAR

Present simple questions: *does*

What **does he** do?

Why **does she** want a new job?

How long **does it** take to get to work?

- 10 Complete the questions with the name of people in the class. Use a different name in each sentence.

- What does \_\_\_\_\_ do?
- Does \_\_\_\_\_ have any brothers or sisters?
- Where does \_\_\_\_\_ live?
- Where does \_\_\_\_\_ work?
- How does \_\_\_\_\_ come to class?
- What food does \_\_\_\_\_ like?

- 11 Work in groups. Ask and answer the questions about people in the class.

A: What does X do?

B: I don't know.

C: She's a teacher.



For more practice, see Exercises 1 and 2 on page 119.

## WRITING

- 12 Write four sentences about things you have and things you want – and don't want – in your life. Say why. Use a dictionary if you need to.



# DO YOU NEED ANYTHING?

my mobile



a map



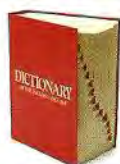
a pen



a towel



a dictionary



a brush



a charger



a small bag



a big coat



lots of clothes



soap



some cash



something to read



food from home



some other shoes



a toothbrush and toothpaste



## VOCABULARY Things

- 1 What do you need on holiday? Tick (✓) the things you take with you.
- 2 ▶ 62 Listen and repeat the words from Exercise 1.
- 3 Work in pairs. Say what you take on holiday. Think about these times and places.
  - a weekend in a city
  - a week to visit friends or family
  - two weeks in a hotel in a hot country



## LISTENING

- 4 ▶ 63 Listen. Answer the questions.
  - 1 Who are the people in the picture? Write the names.
  - 2 Where is Wilton from?
- 5 ▶ 64 Listen to Part 2. Answer the questions.
  - 1 How long does it take from Peru to the UK?
  - 2 Is Wilton tired?
  - 3 What food or drink does Wilton want?
  - 4 What else does he need?

## DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS

### Asking for help in conversation

When you don't hear a word

Sorry? **Can you say that again?**

When you don't know a word

**How do you say** batería (in English)?

- 6 ▶ 65 Listen to a conversation.
  - 1 What's the woman's question?
  - 2 What's the man's answer?



- 7 ▶ 66 Listen again. Then work in pairs. Practise the questions in the box. Use your own words.
- 8 Listen to the questions your teacher asks. Use the phrases from the box.  
 T: What do you do?  
 S: Sorry, can you say that again?  
 T: Do you have a towel?  
 S: Sorry, can you say that again?
- 9 Ask other students in your class. *How do you say [English word] in your language?* Use words from Exercise 1. Do the words sound the same or very different?
- 10 Work in groups. Think of three more things you take on holiday.

## GRAMMAR

### a and any

Do you have Do you need Do you want	a	towel? pen?
	any	towels? other clothes? money? toothpaste?
	anything (else)?	
	a	charger.
I don't have I don't need I don't want	any	other clothes. milk.
	anything (else).	

- 11 Say things from Exercise 1 you *don't* take on holiday. Why?  
 I don't take any towels on holiday. The hotel has towels.  
 I don't take a dictionary. I have one on my phone!
- 12 Complete the sentences with *a* or *any*.
- A: Do you need \_\_\_\_\_ dictionary?  
 B: No, thanks. I understand the word.
  - A: Do you have \_\_\_\_\_ money? I only have euros.  
 B: Yes. How much do you need?
  - A: It's very cold here. Do you have \_\_\_\_\_ other clothes?  
 B: Yes. I have a big coat.
  - A: Do you need \_\_\_\_\_ towel?  
 B: No, it's OK. I have one.
  - A: Do you want \_\_\_\_\_ food?  
 B: Yes, please. I'm hungry.
  - A: Do you have \_\_\_\_\_ brothers or sisters?  
 B: Yes. One brother and three sisters.

- 13 ▶ 67 Listen and check.
- 14 Work in groups. Ask and answer six questions with *Do you have/want/need ....* Use words from Exercise 1.

**G** For more practice, see Exercise 1 on page 120.

## SPEAKING

- 15 Student A: you are a student like Wilton. Write three questions on paper to ask your host.  
*Do you have a towel?*  
 Student B: you are a host like Janet. Write three questions on paper to ask your student.  
*Do you want to have a shower?*
- 16 Give your questions to your partner. Write answers to your partner's questions.  
 A: Do you have a towel?  
 B: Of course. Wait here.  
 A: Do you need to have a shower?  
 B: No. I'm OK now. Later.
- 17 Have conversations. Use your questions and answers.  
 A: Hello. Are you ...?  
 B: Yes.  
 A: Hi. Nice to meet you! I'm ....  
 B: Hello .... Nice to meet you, too.  
 A: Come in. Leave your bag there.  
 B: OK.  
 A: ...

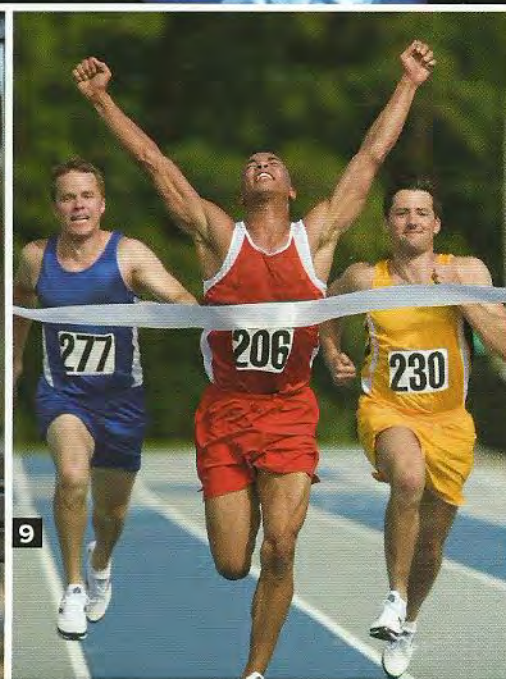
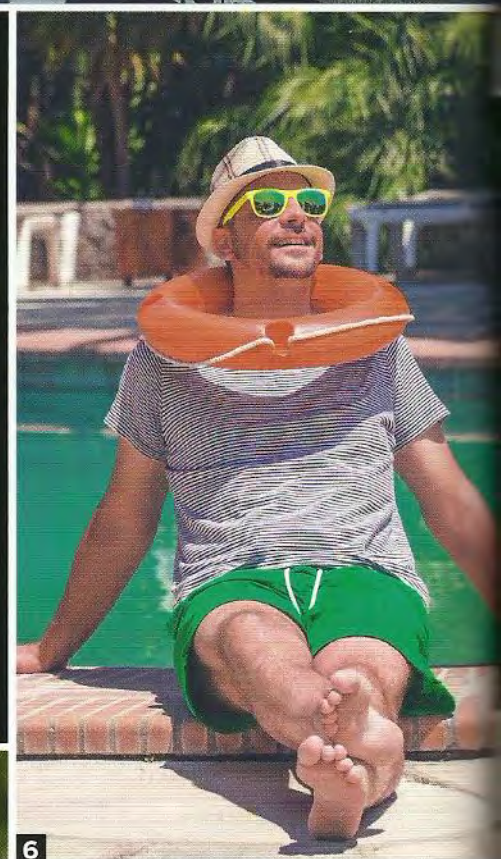
## PRONUNCIATION AND REVIEW

- 18 ▶ 68 Listen to the sentences. They are fast. Write the number.
- |                                      |         |
|--------------------------------------|---------|
| How's the weather?                   | _____   |
| How's your class?                    | _____   |
| It's not very expensive.             | _____   |
| It's not very nice. It's very cold.  | _____   |
| Do you have any brothers or sisters? | _____   |
| Do you have a pen?                   | 1 _____ |
| Do you want to go shopping?          | _____   |
| I don't have a lot of free time.     | _____   |
- 19 ▶ 69 Listen and check the answers. They are slow then fast.
- 20 Practise saying the sentences.
- 21 Work in pairs. In one minute, say:
- adjectives
  - things you have

**G** For more pronunciation, see Exercises 1 and 2 on page 120.



# 4 WHERE AND WHEN?







3

## IN THIS UNIT YOU LEARN HOW TO:

- ask about places and say what's there
- understand simple directions
- talk about your week
- ask for help / ask to do things in class



4

## WORDS FOR UNIT 4

### 1 Look at the words and photos.

- |                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| 1 a walk on the beach  | 7 in the train station                      |
| 2 turn off your phone  | 8 it's not open                             |
| 3 get up early         | 9 first (1st), second (2nd) and third (3rd) |
| 4 see a film           | 10 how many?                                |
| 5 left and right       | 11 cash machines                            |
| 6 sit next to the pool | 12 a church at night                        |

### 2 ▶ 70 Listen and repeat the words.

### 3 Work in pairs. Don't look at the words.

Student A: say the number.

Student B: say the words.



7

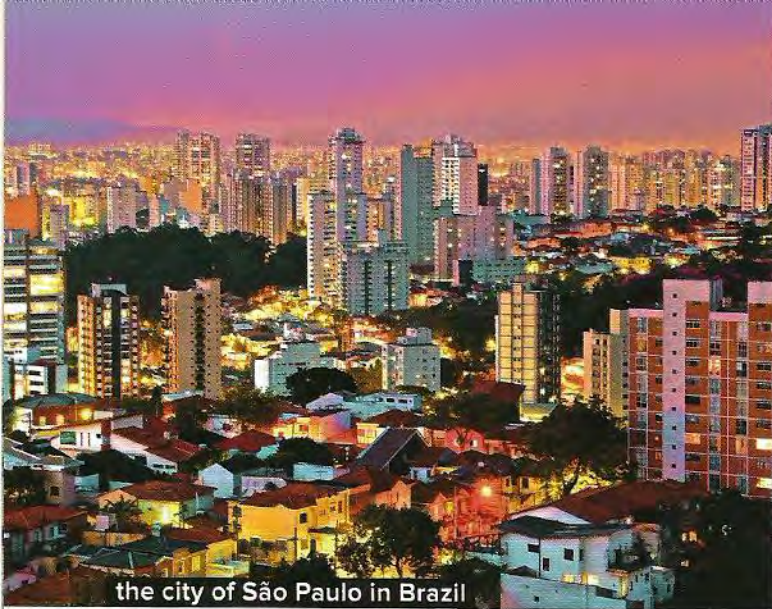


11



12



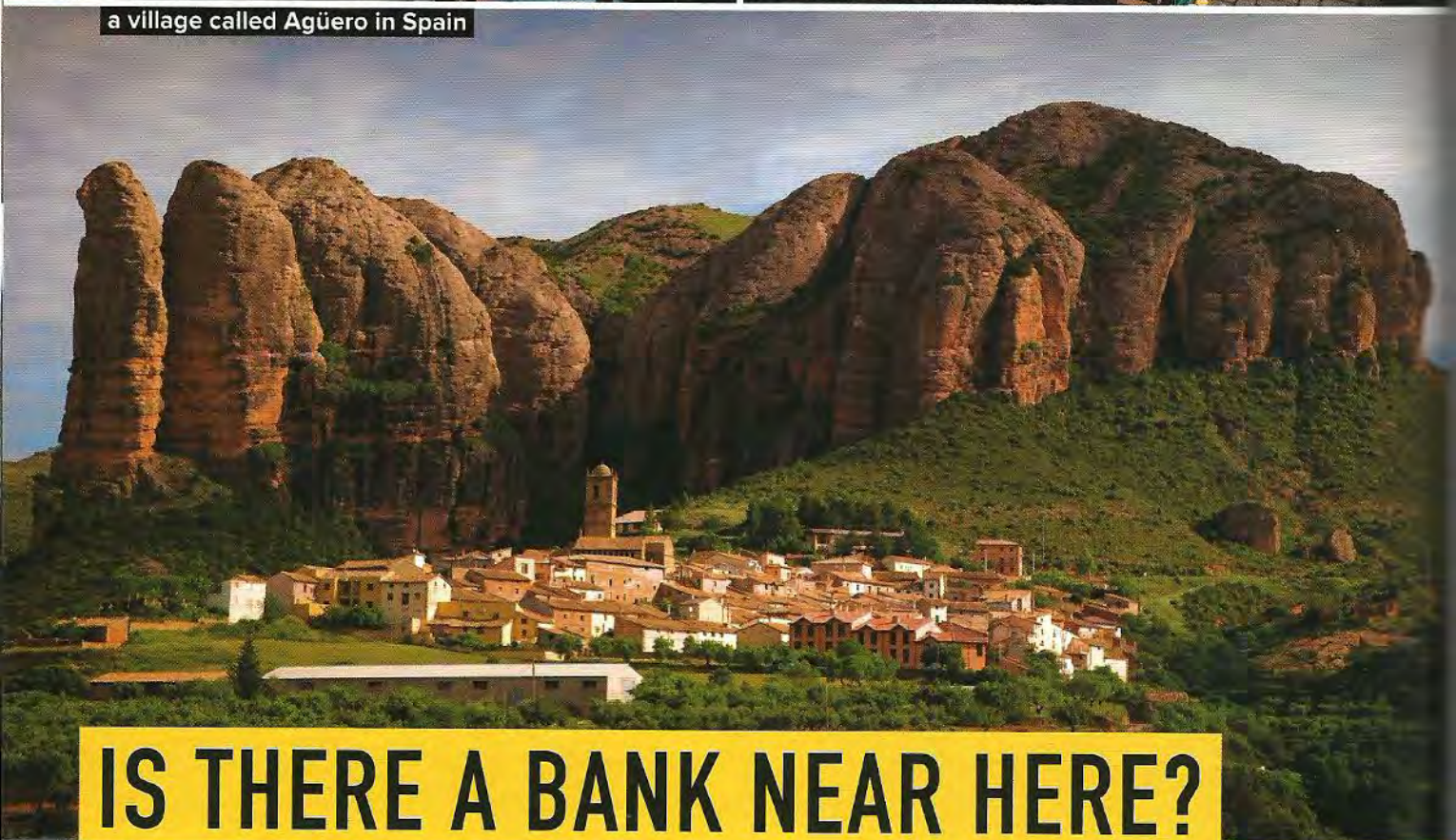


the city of São Paulo in Brazil



a town called Ludlow in the UK

a village called Agüero in Spain



# IS THERE A BANK NEAR HERE?

## VOCABULARY Places

- Look at the three photos of places. Which places do you like / don't you like? Are they good places to live / go for a holiday?
- Tick (✓) the words you know. Compare in pairs.

a bank	a cinema	a park
a café	a clothes shop	a restaurant
a car park	a hospital	a supermarket
a cash machine	a hotel	a swimming pool
a church	a market	the train station

- ▶ 71 Listen and repeat.
- What places in Exercise 2 are usually:
  - in a village?
  - in a town?

- ▶ 72 Listen to four questions. Write the places.

- Is there a \_\_\_\_\_ near here?
- Is there a \_\_\_\_\_ near here?
- Is there a \_\_\_\_\_ near here?
- Is there a \_\_\_\_\_ near here?

- ▶ 73 Listen and match the answers (a–d) with questions (1–4) from Exercise 5.

- Sorry. I don't know. I don't live here. \_\_\_\_\_
- Yes. There's one next to the train station. \_\_\_\_\_
- Yes. There's a Santander bank on this road. Down there. On the right. \_\_\_\_\_
- Yes. There's one on this road. Down there. On the left. \_\_\_\_\_



## GRAMMAR

### Is there ... ? There's ...

A: **Is there** a supermarket near here?

B: **There's** one next to the train station.

A: **Is there** a bank near here?

B: **There's** a Santander bank on this road.

A: **Is there** a bank near here?

B: No, **there isn't** (one).

- 7 Work in pairs. Try to remember the conversations in Exercise 6. Ask and answer the questions.

- 8 Work in pairs. Find five different things in the two pictures. Ask questions.

Student A: look at File 6 on page 145.

Student B: look at File 7 on page 146.

A: *Is there a bank?*

B: *Yes. Is there a cash machine?*

A: *No.*

**G** For more about prepositions, see page 120 and do exercises 1 and 2 on page 121.

## WRITING

- 9 Write five sentences about the different things.

*There's a hotel in Picture A, **but** there isn't one in Picture B.*

*There's a man in Picture A, **but** there's a woman in Picture B.*

## LISTENING

- 10 **74** Listen. Where do they want to go?

- The woman needs a \_\_\_\_\_.
- The man wants to go to a \_\_\_\_\_ called Gema.
- The woman wants a \_\_\_\_\_.

- 11 **74** Listen again. Choose the correct word(s).

- The cash machine is:
  - 100 / 200 metres down the road.
  - in / next to the supermarket.
  - on the left / right.
- The pizza restaurant called Gema is:
  - on this / the next road.
  - the first / second restaurant.
  - on the left / right.
- The car park is on London Road.
  - London Road is the first / second road.
  - She needs to go left / right.
  - The car park is on the left / right.

- 12 **74** Listen again and read the conversations on page 152 to check your answers.

- 13 Work in pairs. Practise the conversations from Exercise 12.

## DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS

### called

We use *called* to say the names of things and places.

*Do you know a restaurant **called** Gema?*

*On Long Street, there's a bookshop **called** Bradley's.*

*There's a nice clothes shop **called** Looking Good.*

- 14 Complete the phrases with the names of places you know.

a restaurant called \_\_\_\_\_

a clothes shop called \_\_\_\_\_

a bookshop called \_\_\_\_\_

a hotel called \_\_\_\_\_

a village called \_\_\_\_\_

a town called \_\_\_\_\_

a \_\_\_\_\_ called \_\_\_\_\_

- 15 Work in pairs. Use your ideas from Exercise 14. Have conversations like this.

A: *Do you know a restaurant called Gema?*

B: *Yes, I like it.*

A: *Do you know a restaurant called Gema?*

B: *No. Where is it?*

A: *It's on Peter's Road.*

B: *Is it far? / Is it nice? / Is it expensive?*

## CONVERSATION PRACTICE

- 16 Think about the town or city you are in now. Write:

- three questions with *Is there ... near here?*
- one question with *Do you know ...?*

- 17 Work in groups. Ask and answer the questions.

... near here?

Sorry, I don't know.

OR

OK, thanks.

Yes. There's one on ... / next to ... / ...

OR

Do you know a ... called ...?

Yes. It's on ...

Is it far?

Yes / No – it's about ... minutes from here.



**75** For more practice, listen to another two examples.



# WHEN ARE YOU FREE?



## REVIEW AND SPEAKING

### 1 Choose two.

- Look at the photos on pages 32 and 33. Test each other.
- Ask about: a cash machine, a supermarket, a swimming pool, a restaurant.
- Find out where people in the class work. What places from Exercise 2 on page 34 do they work in?

A: What do you do?      A: What do you do?  
 B: I'm a teacher.      B: I work in a hospital.  
 A: Where do you work?      A: Where is it?  
 B: A school in Al Ain.      B: In Festival Street.

### 5 Write three days and times you are free.

Monday morning  
 Wednesday evening  
 Saturday afternoon

### 6 Ask people in the class when they are free. Find two people who are free at the same time as you.

A: Are you free on Monday morning?  
 B: No, sorry. I'm busy. Are you free on Saturday afternoon?  
 A: Yes.  
 B: Great. Me too.

## VOCABULARY Days and times of day

### 2 ▶ 76 Listen and repeat the days of the week.

Monday      Wednesday      Friday      Sunday  
 Tuesday      Thursday      Saturday

### 3 Complete 1–10 with a day or a time.

- Today: \_\_\_\_\_
- Tomorrow: \_\_\_\_\_
- Yesterday: \_\_\_\_\_
- Morning is from \_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_.
- Afternoon is from \_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_.
- Evening is from \_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_.
- Night is from \_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_.
- I have my English class on \_\_\_\_\_. It's from \_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_.
- The bank is always closed on \_\_\_\_\_.
- Supermarkets normally open at \_\_\_\_\_ in the morning.

### 4 Work in pairs. Discuss your ideas.

## GRAMMAR

### Adverbs of frequency

	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thur	Fri	Sat	Sun
<i>I always go swimming in the morning.</i>	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
<i>I normally go swimming in the morning.</i>	x	x		x		x	x
<i>I usually go swimming in the morning.</i>	x	x		x		x	x
<i>I sometimes go swimming in the morning.</i>			x			x	
<i>I never go swimming in the morning.</i>							



**7 Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions.**

- What days do you work / go to class?
- What days are you normally free?
- What time do you start work/classes?
- What time do you normally go to bed?
- What time do you usually get up?

**G** For more practice, see Exercises 1 and 2 on page 121.

## READING

**8 Read about weekends in different countries. Which place is the same as your country?**

**9 Look at the words in red. Guess what they mean. Check in a dictionary.**

77

## THE END OF THE WORKING WEEK

Different countries have different weekends. The days **depend** on the religion and traditions of the country.

In Saudi Arabia, the weekend is usually Friday and Saturday, but some **companies** only have Friday for their weekend. In Indonesia, people normally only have a free day on Sunday.

In Colombia, people usually work 48 hours a week and lots of people only have Sunday free.

In Italy, people work 40 hours a week. A lot of people have Saturday and Sunday free, but children usually go to school on Saturday morning.

In Russia, Sunday is always a free day.

**Government** offices are always open on Saturday and closed on Sunday and Monday. Other people are usually free on Saturday and Sunday.

People relax in Colombia.

**10 Read again. Which sentences are true?**

- 1 Weekends are always two days.
- 2 Saudi Arabia and Indonesia have the same weekend.
- 3 People in Colombia work a lot of hours and have a short weekend.
- 4 Children in Italy normally go to school from Monday to Saturday.
- 5 In Russia, offices are never open on Saturdays.

## SPEAKING

**11 Work in groups. Discuss the questions.**

- What's the normal working week and weekend in your country?
- How many hours do people usually work? 40? More? Less?
- What is *your* working week – what days and how many hours?
- How many free days do *you* have a year?

**12 Say how often you do these things at the weekend. When do you do them?**

- go shopping for clothes / go shopping for food
- go to the beach / go to the pool
- go to a supermarket / go to a market
- go to church / go to mosque
- go to a village / go to another town or city
- get up early / get up late
- watch a film / watch football
- study English / study for university

*I sometimes go shopping for clothes on Saturday afternoon.*

*I always go to the beach on Friday morning.*

*I never go to the market at the weekend.*



People go to mosque in Indonesia.




Government offices in Russia



# CAN YOU HELP ME?

## SPEAKING

1  78 Listen to the questions.

## CLASS QUIZ

- 1 What time does the class start?
- 2 How long is the class?
- 3 What's the name or number of your classroom?
- 4 What floor is your classroom on?
- 5 Do you have a break? How long is it?
- 6 What's the name of your book?
- 7 Do you know the names of all the students in the class?
- 8 What's the first name of the teacher? And the family name of the teacher?
- 9 Who is the youngest person in the class?
- 10 Do you need to do homework? One hour a week? More? Less?
- 11 Is there anywhere to get a coffee in the school?
- 12 Can you have food or drink in the class?

2 Work in groups. Discuss the questions. Can you answer all the questions?

## GRAMMAR

### Can ...?

A: **Can** we have food or drink in the class?

B: Sorry, you can't.

A: **Can** I use your pen?

B: Sure.

A: **Can** you do Exercise 3 on page 121 for homework?

B: OK.




**G** For practice, see Exercises 1–3 on page 121–122.



3 Look at some questions people ask in an English class. Who asks questions 1–7? Write *T* (teacher) or *S* (student).

- 1 Can we have a break? *S*
- 2 Can we have five more minutes?
- 3 Can we have drinks in the class?
- 4 Can you close the window?
- 5 Can you do exercises six and seven?
- 6 Can you help me?
- 7 Can you wait a minute?

4  79 Listen and repeat the questions from Exercise 3.

5 Work in pairs. Take turns.

**Student A:** ask the questions from Exercise 3.

**Student B:** give an answer.

A: *Can we have a break?*

B: *Sure/OK.*

6 Read these parts of five conversations. Complete them with the questions from Exercise 3.

1 Student: It's difficult. \_\_\_\_\_?

Teacher: Sure.

2 Student: \_\_\_\_\_? I'm cold.

Teacher: Is everybody else cold?

3 Student A: Do you want to go and have a coffee?

Student B: Sure. \_\_\_\_\_? I need to go to the toilet.

4 Student: I can't come to class on Thursday.


Teacher: OK. \_\_\_\_\_?

5a Student: We're tired. \_\_\_\_\_?

5b Student: \_\_\_\_\_?

Teacher: Sorry. You can't.

Student: OK. \_\_\_\_\_? We don't have time to drink our coffee.

7  80 Listen to the full conversations and check.





## VOCABULARY Classroom verbs

### 8 Match the phrases (1–8) with the pictures (a–h).

- |                     |                         |
|---------------------|-------------------------|
| 1 turn on the light | 5 play it again         |
| 2 sit at the front  | 6 leave early           |
| 3 come in           | 7 write it on the board |
| 4 use your tablet   | 8 share your book       |

### 9 Look at the situations (1–6). Write questions with *Can you* or *Can I* and phrases from Exercise 8.

- 1 I can't see the board. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 I don't have my book. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Sorry, I'm late. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 I don't feel well. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 I don't know this word. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 I don't understand. \_\_\_\_\_

### 10 Write more questions with *Can you* or *Can I* that:

- you ask the teacher
- the teacher asks you
- you ask another student

### 11 Work in pairs. Ask and answer your questions.

## PRONUNCIATION AND REVIEW

### 12 ▶ 81 Listen to the sentences. They are fast. Write the number.

- Is there a hospital near here? \_\_\_\_\_
- It's down this road on the right. \_\_\_\_\_
- It's at the end of this road on the left. \_\_\_\_\_
- There's one on the third floor. \_\_\_\_\_
- Do you know a town called Atrani? 1
- I normally work late on Mondays. \_\_\_\_\_
- Are you free tomorrow night? \_\_\_\_\_
- There's one near here. The first road on the right. \_\_\_\_\_

### 13 ▶ 82 Listen and check the answers. They are slow then fast.

### 14 Work in pairs. Practise the sentences.

### 15 Work in pairs. In one minute, say:

- days of the week and times of day.
- places in towns and cities.



For more pronunciation, see Exercise 1 on page 122.



# VIDEO 2



## MORNING

### 1 Work in pairs. Answer the questions.

- Do you like mornings?
- Do you usually feel tired? Happy? Hungry? Good or bad?

### 2 Watch the first part of the video (0:00–0:56). Tick (✓) the countries you hear.

Japan		Argentina	
America		Italy	
Turkey		Brazil	
Vietnam		Poland	
China		South Africa	

### 3 Read the sentences from Part 2 of the video. Which country or person do you think each sentence is about?

1 He has an important job in a bank.

A: The man from Argentina?

B: No, the man from Turkey. Nice clothes.

A: Oh, yes.

2 Paolo is her first child. \_\_\_\_\_

3 Children usually go to school on their own. \_\_\_\_\_

4 The building is a new block of flats. \_\_\_\_\_

5 He goes to the park every morning. \_\_\_\_\_

6 She sells flowers in the street. \_\_\_\_\_

7 The school gives the students breakfast for free. \_\_\_\_\_

### 4 Watch the full video and check.

### 5 Work in pairs. Complete the sentences with the numbers.

1st	7.30	8	50	\$490
5	200	10	73	13 million

- This is Maiko. She's \_\_\_\_\_. She gets up at 6. It takes \_\_\_\_\_ minutes to get to school.
- Paolo is her \_\_\_\_\_ child. He often wakes up at \_\_\_\_\_.
- In America, \_\_\_\_\_ children don't have breakfast.
- This is Serhat. He starts work at \_\_\_\_\_.
- This is Yang. He's \_\_\_\_\_. He goes to the park every morning.
- She has \_\_\_\_\_ flowers on her bike – or more!
- This is Diego. He starts work at \_\_\_\_\_. He gets \_\_\_\_\_ a month.

### 6 Watch the video again and check.

## SPEAKING

### 7 Work in groups. Ask and answer the questions. Use a dictionary if you need to.

- What time do you get up?
- What do you have for breakfast?
- Do children sometimes have breakfast at school in your country?
- Do you do exercise in the morning?
- What time do you start work/school/university?
- What things do people sell in the street in your town?



# REVIEW 2

## GRAMMAR

### 1 Choose the correct word(s).

- Do you have *any* / *a* money?
- I don't* / *I'm not* well. I want to go home.
- Can *you* / *we* help me? This is difficult.
- I sometimes* / *never* go to the cinema. I don't like it.
- Do you have* / *Have you* a pen?
- Is there* / *There is* a hospital in your town?
- This bus *don't* / *not* / *doesn't* go to my area.
- How long *it takes* / *does it take* / *it does take*?

### 2 Rewrite the sentences as negatives (–) or questions (?).

- You have a mobile. (?)
- There's a supermarket near here. (?)
- They're French. (–)
- It takes a long time. (–)
- You need to do it today. (?)
- She likes coffee. (–)

### 3 Complete the questions with *Can I* or *Can you*.

- \_\_\_\_\_ use your pen?
- \_\_\_\_\_ help me?
- \_\_\_\_\_ do exercises 4 and 5 for homework?
- I can't see the board. \_\_\_\_\_ sit at the front?
- \_\_\_\_\_ wait a minute? I'm busy.
- \_\_\_\_\_ help you?

### 4 Put the adverbs in the best place in the sentences.

- Is the restaurant busy on Saturday night? (usually)
- What time do you get up? (normally)
- I go to the beach. I can't swim. (never)
- I get up late on Sundays. (always)
- I don't go out in the week. (normally)
- I get the bus to work, but I get a taxi. (usually, sometimes)

### 5 ▶ 83 Listen and complete the sentences with one word in each space. Contractions (*I'm*, *don't*, etc.) are one word.

- \_\_\_\_\_ she \_\_\_\_\_ brothers or sisters?
- I \_\_\_\_\_ shopping \_\_\_\_\_ near here.
- \_\_\_\_\_ in my class at school.
- Do you need \_\_\_\_\_ ?
- \_\_\_\_\_ car park on the left.

### 6 ▶ 83 Work in pairs. Compare your answers. Listen again to check.

## VOCABULARY

### 7 Match the verbs in the box with the correct groups of words (1–8).

get	share	take	use
go	sit	turn off	want

- \_\_\_\_\_ your phone / the light
- \_\_\_\_\_ a shower / a photo
- \_\_\_\_\_ more free time / a new car
- \_\_\_\_\_ next to the pool / at the front
- \_\_\_\_\_ books / my food with you
- \_\_\_\_\_ married / a coffee
- \_\_\_\_\_ shopping / on holiday
- \_\_\_\_\_ a dictionary / your tablets

### 8 Put the words into three groups: places, things or days / times of the day.

afternoon	charger	hotel	tomorrow
bag	church	map	toothpaste
bank	cinema	market	yesterday
brush	evening	Saturday	

### 9 Replace the words in *italics* with their opposites from the box.

busy	early	hot	morning
closed	good	left	new

- The supermarket's *open*.  
*The supermarket's closed.*
- I'm *free* on Monday.
- It's very *cold*.
- I get up *late* on Sundays.
- I go there every *evening*.
- It's a *bad* film.
- It's on the *right*.
- They're my *old* shoes.

### 10 Complete the sentences with these adjectives.

difficult	hungry	married	tired
great	long	small	well

- I'm \_\_\_\_\_ and I have two children.
- Are you \_\_\_\_\_? Do you want a sandwich?
- I like my flat, but it's very \_\_\_\_\_.
- My homework is very \_\_\_\_\_. I can't do it.
- Can I leave early? I'm not very \_\_\_\_\_.
- I take the train to work. It usually takes a \_\_\_\_\_ time.
- I'm \_\_\_\_\_. I need to have a break.
- It's a \_\_\_\_\_ film. I love it.



# 5 GOING PLACES



1



2



4



5



8



9

DEPARTURES									
TIME	FLIGHT	FLIGHT	FLIGHT	FLIGHT	FLIGHT	FLIGHT	FLIGHT	FLIGHT	FLIGHT
08:40	BRUNEI	S0182	NZ3400	02	GATE CLOSING	02			
09:00	CHENNAI	TK9338	VA5400	02	GATE CLOSING	02			
09:00	CEBU	A1347		07	GATE CLOSING	07			
09:00	DA NANG	M1588	NZ3688	04	LAST CALL	04			
09:00		S05088		04					
09:05	WUHAN	M1832	NZ3614	04	GATE CLOSING	04			
		S05132	VA5866	04					
		M1986	S05186	04					
09:10	HANOI	VA5825		04					
09:10	PHUKET	TR300		10	BOARDING	10			
09:15	KUALA LUMPUR	TR658		10	BOARDING	10			
09:20	HANOI	TR452		10	BOARDING	10			
		SQ178	M15876	02	GATE OPEN	02			
09:20	DHAKA	VA5567	NZ3458	02					
09:20	MANILA	SQ448	TK9340	02	GATE OPEN	02			
09:20	BALI	S0910	NZ3436	02	GATE OPEN	02			
		S0942	GA0071	02	GATE OPEN	02			
09:30	JAKARTA	VA5614	M15832	02	GATE OPEN	02			
09:30	BANGKOK-BKK	S0956	VA5624	02	GATE OPEN	02			
		TR806		10	GATE OPEN	10			

10



11





3



6

## IN THIS UNIT YOU LEARN HOW TO:

- talk about good places to go
- say how to get to places
- talk about journeys
- buy train tickets
- ask about and say your plans
- say where and when to meet

## WORDS FOR UNIT 5

1 Look at the words and photos.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1 go <b>out</b> in the <b>evening</b>  | 7 the <b>main square</b>                  |
| 2 <b>visit</b> a <b>museum</b>         | 8 <b>wait</b> on the <b>platform</b>      |
| 3 <b>use</b> the <b>ticket machine</b> | 9 a <b>bus stop</b>                       |
| 4 <b>pay</b> by <b>card</b>            | 10 What <b>time's</b> the <b>flight</b> ? |
| 5 the <b>Old Town</b>                  | 11 <b>sleep well</b>                      |
| 6 <b>stay</b> at <b>home</b>           | 12 <b>play</b> football                   |

2 84 Listen and repeat the words.

3 Work in pairs. Don't look at the words.

Student A: say the number.

Student B: say the words.



7



12





# GOOD PLACES TO GO

Visitors look at packets of food in the noodle museum in Yokohama, Japan.

## SPEAKING

### 1 Work in pairs. Where do you go to:

- buy new clothes? *a clothes shop, a market*
- go out in the evening? *an area called Vestebro*
- get some money?
- have something to eat?
- have a walk?
- go swimming?
- sit and have a coffee?
- see some interesting art?
- see a film?

### 2 Choose four activities from Exercise 1. Say where you usually do these things.

*I normally sit and have a coffee in a café called Music and Beans. It's near my house.*

*I usually get some money from a cash machine near my office.*

## LISTENING

### 3 ▶ 85 Listen to five conversations. Match conversations 1–5 with places a–e.

- |                |                               |
|----------------|-------------------------------|
| Conversation 1 | a a pool or a beach           |
| Conversation 2 | b a good museum               |
| Conversation 3 | c a cinema or the main square |
| Conversation 4 | d an area called Cihangir     |
| Conversation 5 | e a street called Szeroka     |

### 4 ▶ 85 Listen again. Why do they want to go to each place? Choose an activity from Exercise 1.

### 5 ▶ 85 Listen again. Write the short words.

- 1 Are there any good shops \_\_\_\_\_ here?
- 2 There's a pool \_\_\_\_\_ this road. Or there's a beach \_\_\_\_\_ thirty minutes from here.
- 3 Not \_\_\_\_\_ the village. People go \_\_\_\_\_ the town. There are some nice places \_\_\_\_\_ the main square.
- 4 Try Ariel. It's \_\_\_\_\_ a street called Szeroka. \_\_\_\_\_ Kazimierz.
- 5 There's a good museum \_\_\_\_\_ the centre. It's \_\_\_\_\_ the station.

## DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS

### best

We often use **best** to talk about one thing that is very good.

*What's the **best** restaurant?*

*Where's the **best** place to go?*

*It's **best** to take a bus.*

### 6 Work in groups. Think about your town/city. What's the best:

- |               |         |           |
|---------------|---------|-----------|
| 1 restaurant? | 3 area? | 5 hotel?  |
| 2 museum?     | 4 park? | 6 market? |

## GRAMMAR

### Are there ... ? / There are ...

A: **Are there** any good shops near here?

B: Yes. **There are** lots of nice places in Cihangir.

A: **Are there** any places to go out in the evening here?

B: Yes. **There are** some good places on South Street.



## 7 Choose the correct word(s).

- 1 A: I want to have a coffee. *Is there / Are there* a nice café near here?  
B: Yes. *There's / There are* four or five different places in Nova Street.
- 2 A: I want to have something to eat. *Is there / Are there* any good restaurants near here?  
B: Yes. Try Via Garibaldi. *There's / There are* some nice places there.
- 3 A: I need to get some money. *Is there a / any* bank near here?  
B: Yes, *there's / there are* one down this road.
- 4 A: I want to visit some places. *Are there a / any* interesting places near here?  
B: Well, *there's / there are* a museum in the Old Town. Lots of people go there.

## 8 ▶ 86 Listen to the sentences. They are fast then slow.

- 1 Are there any good shops near here?
- 2 Are there any nice places to eat?
- 3 Are there any markets in town?
- 4 There are some nice cafés in the main square.
- 5 There are lots of good places to go.
- 6 There are normally a lot of people there.

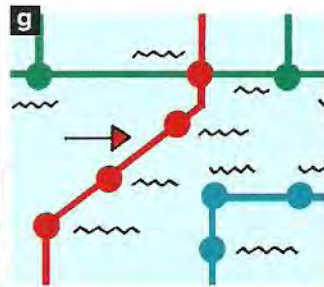
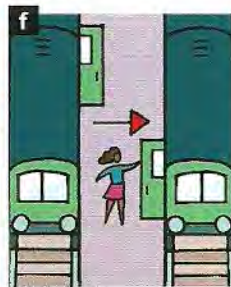
**G** For more practice, see Exercises 1–3 on page 122.

## 9 Work in pairs. Practise the sentences.

## VOCABULARY Getting there

### 10 Match the phrases (1–8) with the pictures (a–h).

- |                  |                     |
|------------------|---------------------|
| 1 get off        | 5 walk to work      |
| 2 get a taxi     | 6 change trains     |
| 3 go home        | 7 wait for the bus  |
| 4 take the metro | 8 take the red line |



## WRITING

### 11 Write true sentences about you and where you live. Use the ideas here. Change the words in red.

The **metro** in my town is **very cheap**.

I usually **take the train** to work.

I usually wait about **ten minutes** for the train.

To get to my house, take the **metro**. It's **the blue line**.  
Get off at **Rocafort**.

I **never** walk to the shops.

I **sometimes** get a taxi to go home.

## CONVERSATION PRACTICE

### 12 ▶ 87 Listen to the complete conversations from Exercise 3. Answer the questions.

	How do you get there?	How long does it take?
1	walk	
2		30 minutes
3		
4		
5		

### 13 Work in pairs. You are in your partner's home. Write three questions to ask about places.

*I want to buy some clothes. Are there any good shops near here?*

### 14 Student A: give your questions to your partner.

Student B: think of answers and directions.

### 15 Have conversations. Take turns.

Student A

Student B

I want to ....  
Is/Are there ...?

There's / There are ....  
[Say where.]

How do you get there?

It's best to take ... /  
It takes ...

OK. Thanks.

Or you can .... It takes ...

▶ 88 For more practice, listen to another example.



# HAVE A GOOD TRIP!

## REVIEW AND SPEAKING

- 1 Write two nouns next to each verb. Work in groups. Compare.  
1 take \_\_\_\_\_ 4 wait for \_\_\_\_\_  
2 get off \_\_\_\_\_ 5 buy \_\_\_\_\_  
3 visit \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Ask other students the questions. Add one more question.  
How do you normally get here / to school / to work?  
How long does it take?

## READING

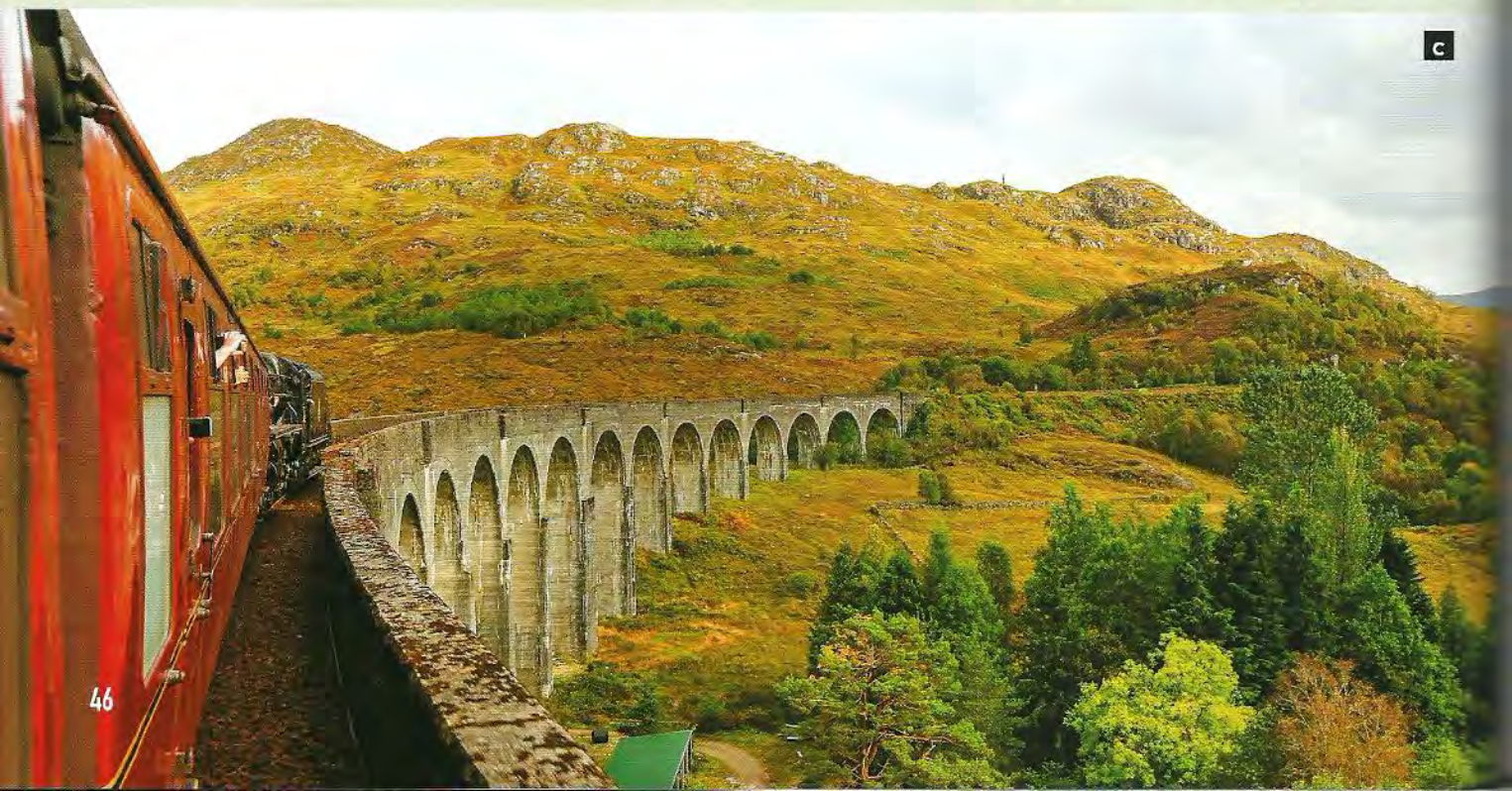
- 3 Read the first line of the text. Do you think trains are best? Why? / Why not?
- 4 Read about train travel. Match paragraphs 1–3 with photos a–c.
- 5 Match sentences a–c with paragraphs 1–3.  
a A train journey can be a holiday.  
b There are some beautiful stations.  
c You can get great views from a train.

▶ 89

## WHY I LOVE TRAIN TRAVEL

*Planes are fast, buses are cheap, but trains are the best. Here are three reasons:*

- 1 This is Grand Central in New York. It is more than 100 years old. It has 44 **platforms** and 750,000 people use the station every day.
- 2 You can sit and see the world outside. Sometimes you can see **beautiful** mountains or the sea. This is the train from Fort William to Mallaig in Scotland. This line is in the Harry Potter films. It takes 80 minutes and a **single ticket** only **costs** £7.50 (\$10).
- 3 Some train journeys take a long time and you sleep on the train. You can travel for four days in Kyushu, Japan on the private Seven Star train. There are only 28 **passengers**. They can sit and talk and have dinner together. You can get off and visit some interesting places. It costs \$14,000 for four nights. Or you can have a cheap holiday on the train from Moscow to Vladivostok in the east of Russia. It takes six days and seventeen hours. That's a lot of time to make friends and it only costs \$160 in **third class**!



c



6 Read again. Answer the questions.

- 1 Where is Grand Central?
- 2 Where is Fort William?
- 3 Where is the Seven Star Train?
- 4 Which journey is very expensive?
- 5 Which journey is very long?

7 Look at the words in **red**. Guess what they mean. Check in a dictionary.

8 Work in pairs. Do you want to visit Grand Central or go on each train journey? Why? / Why not?

## VOCABULARY Buying tickets

9 **90** Listen and repeat the words and phrases. Tick (✓) the words you know.

cash	a machine	return
change trains	the next train	second class
enter your number	pay by card	single
first class	a receipt	a ticket

10 Complete the conversation between an assistant (A) and a tourist (T). Use one word from the box in each space.

A: Do you want to buy a <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_?

T: Er ... yes.

A: You can use the <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ over here. You can pay by cash or <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ and you don't need to wait.

T: Oh, OK. Is the machine in German?

A: Yes, but I can help you. Come with me.

T: OK.

A: Where are you going?

T: **Lausanne.**

A: <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ or return?

T: Return.

A: For now, right?

T: Yes. And back on **Monday.**

A: Yes, fine. <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ class? Second class?

T: Second class is fine.

A: OK. Do you want a receipt?

T: Yes, please.

A: Put your card in here and enter your <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.

T: OK.

A: And here are your tickets and <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.

T: When's the <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ train?

A: 9.47. From platform 8.

T: Sorry. Which platform?

A: 8 – at 9.47.

T: OK. Thank you for your help.

A: You're welcome. Have a good day.

11 **91** Listen and check.

12 Work in pairs. Practise the conversation in Exercise 10.

## DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS

### Where are you going?

A: **Where are you going?**

T: **Lausanne.**

A: **Single or return?**

A: **Is this the stop for the 98 bus?**

B: Yes. **Where are you going?**

A: **The museum.**

13 Think of the town or city you are in now. Write down five places you want to go to.

14 Work in pairs. Take turns. Have conversations like this.

A: *Where are you going?*

B: *The City museum.*

A: *You need to take the 73 bus. / You can walk there.*

## SPEAKING

15 Work in pairs. Practise the conversation in Exercise 10 two more times. Take turns to start.

First time: Change the information in red.

Second time: Change the information in blue.







# GOOD PLAN!

## LISTENING

### 1 What do you normally do:

- after your class?
- after work?
- on holiday?

### 2 92 Listen to three conversations about plans. Write the number of the conversations (1, 2 and 3) next to who is talking (a or b).

- a friends at a hotel in the evening \_\_\_\_\_
- b friends at the end of a class \_\_\_\_\_

### 3 93 Listen to the sentences. Repeat them.

- a I need some money. \_\_\_\_\_
- b I need to study. \_\_\_\_\_
- c I need to eat something. \_\_\_\_\_
- d I'm going home. \_\_\_\_\_
- e I'm going to bed. \_\_\_\_\_
- f I'm going to have a coffee. 1
- g I'm going to meet a friend. \_\_\_\_\_
- h I'm going to stay here. \_\_\_\_\_

### 4 92 Listen to the conversations from Exercise 2 again. Write the number of the conversation next to each sentence (a–h) in Exercise 3.

### 5 In which conversations are the two people going to do:

- a the same thing?      b different things?

## GRAMMAR

### Talking about plans: *I'm/We're going ...*

Plan	Where / What	When
<i>I'm going</i>	home	now.
<i>We're going</i>	to the gym	this afternoon.
	to the cinema	at six.
<i>I'm going</i>	to have a coffee	tonight.
<i>We're going</i>	to meet a friend	tomorrow.
	to see a film	on Saturday.
	to play football	after the class.

### 6 Put the words in the correct order.

- 1 tonight / I'm going / to meet my brother
- 2 we're going / this afternoon / to the park
- 3 to the beach / we're going / on Sunday
- 4 now / to have a coffee / I'm going
- 5 tomorrow night / we're going / to have a party
- 6 I'm going / tomorrow morning / to the pool / with some friends

### 7 94 Listen and check.



- 8 Work in pairs. Use the ideas from Exercise 6. Invite your partner.

A: I'm going to meet my brother tonight. Do you want to come?

B: Sorry, I can't. or B: OK. Great!

- 9 Write more plans. Use a dictionary if you need to.

\_\_\_\_\_ after the class.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ tonight.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ on Saturday.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ next week.

- 10 Work in groups. Say your plans.

- 11 Tell the class who is going to do the same thing.

*We're all going for a coffee after the class!*

*Aslim and I are going to the park on Saturday.*

**G** For more practice, see Exercises 1–4 on page 123.

## GRAMMAR

### Asking about plans: *going* and *doing*

	<i>Are you going?</i>
What time	<i>are you going?</i>
Where	<i>are you going?</i>
	<i>are you doing after the class?</i>
What	<i>are you doing tonight?</i>

- 12 Write the questions.

1 A: I'm going to the beach on Saturday. Do you want to come?

B: \_\_\_\_\_?

A: Five or six in the afternoon.

2 A: I'm going to have a walk later.

B: \_\_\_\_\_?

A: Around the Old Town.

3 A: \_\_\_\_\_ tonight?

B: I'm going to see a film. Do you want to come?

A: Sorry. I can't. I need to study.

4 A: \_\_\_\_\_ to Dieter's party tomorrow?

B: Yes. \_\_\_\_\_?

A: Yes. Do you want to share a taxi?

- 13 **95** Listen and repeat the questions in the Grammar box.

**G** For more practice, see Exercises 1 and 2 on page 123.

- 14 Work in pairs. Ask about plans from Exercise 9. Ask questions to know more.

## DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS

### *I'll meet you*

We use *I'll meet you* to say where and when to meet.

*I'll meet you here in ten minutes.*

*I'll meet you outside.*

*I'll meet you here at 6.*

*I'll meet you at the airport.*

- 15 **96** Listen. Choose the correct word(s).

1 I'll meet you at *the restaurant / the hotel*.

2 I'll meet you at *the airport / the station*.

3 I'll meet you at *the bus stop / outside* at six.

4 I'll meet you *here / there* in ten minutes.

5 I'll meet you here at *three / five* o'clock.

- 16 Say the sentences from Exercise 15 and answer.

A: *I'll meet you at the bus stop at six.*

B: OK or B: *Can we meet at six thirty?*

- 17 Ask other students about their plans. Invite someone to do something.

Student A

Student B

What are you doing  
[when]?

I'm going ...

Do you want to come?

[Question]

[Answer]

OK.

Great. I'll meet you ...

Great.

## PRONUNCIATION AND REVIEW

- 18 **97** Listen to the sentences. They are fast. Write the number.

How do you get there? \_\_\_\_\_

What time are you going? \_\_\_\_\_

When's the next train? \_\_\_\_\_

Where are you going? \_\_\_\_\_

We need to get off at the next stop. \_\_\_\_\_

We need to change at Red Square. \_\_\_\_\_

I'll meet you at six. \_\_\_\_\_

I'm going to meet a friend. 1

- 19 **98** Listen and check the answers. They are slow then fast.

- 20 Practise the sentences.

- 21 Work in pairs. In one minute, say:

- words for buying tickets and travelling by train
- things you are going to do next weekend

**G** For more pronunciation, see Exercise 1 on page 124.



6

# AWAY FROM HOME



2



1



4



6



7



11



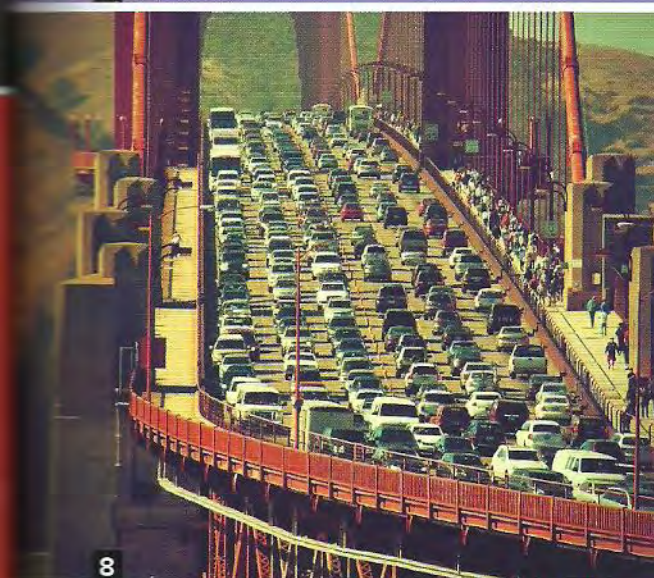
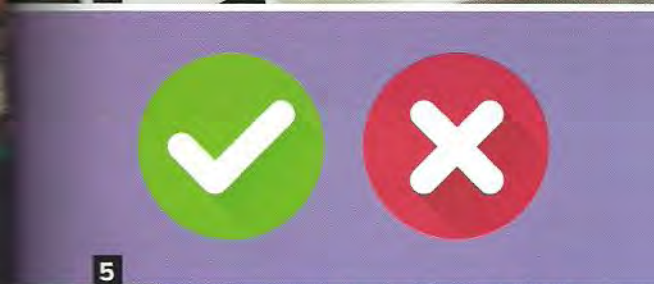
12

50



13





## IN THIS UNIT YOU LEARN HOW TO:

- say there's a problem
- say *don't worry* and *that's OK*
- ask how something was
- check in to a hotel
- talk about your stay
- ask what people did

## WORDS FOR UNIT 6

### 1 Look at the words and photos.

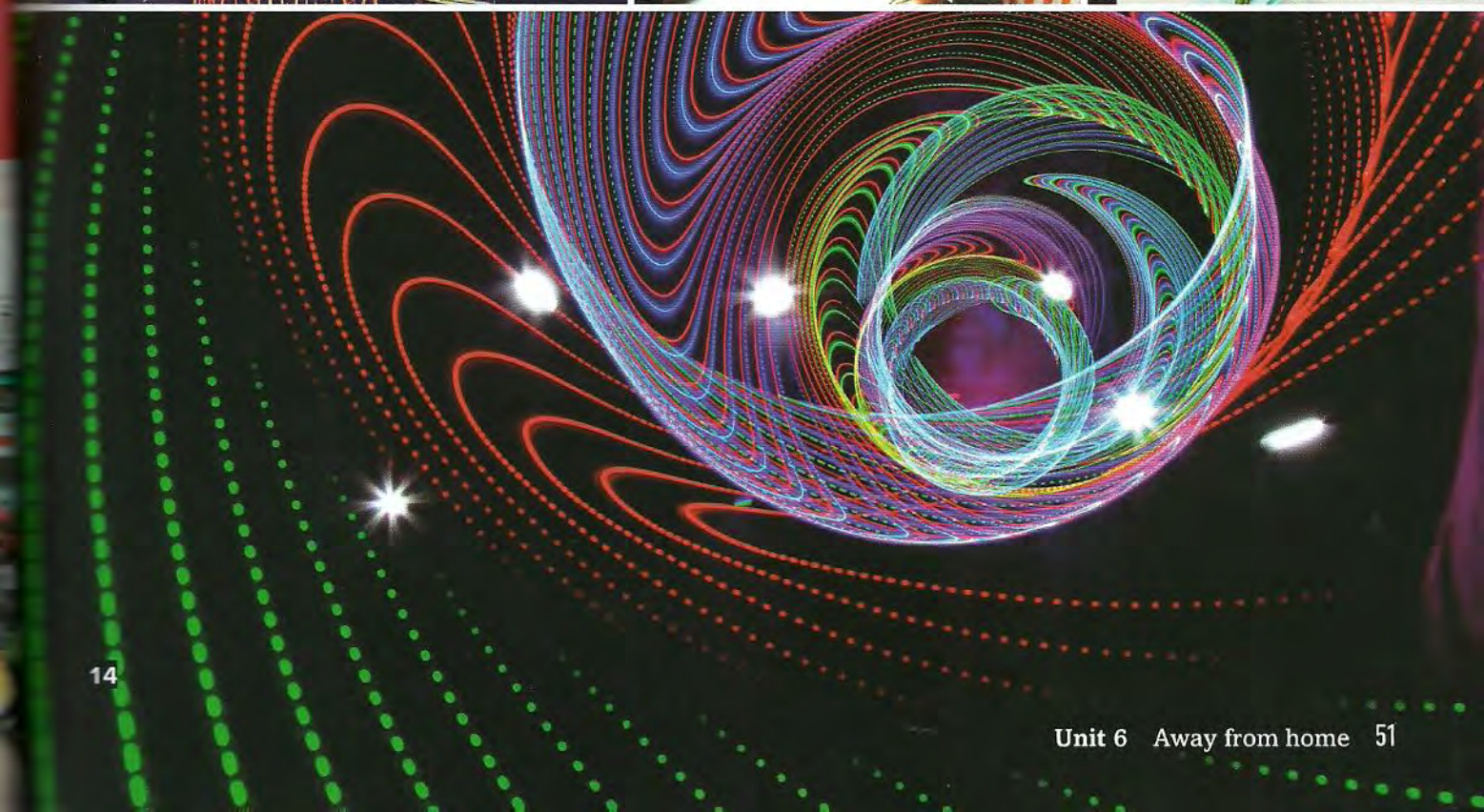
- |                                    |  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| 1 on the <b>top floor</b>          | 8 a lot of <b>traffic</b>                  |
| 2 <b>keys</b>                      | 9 make a <b>booking</b>                    |
| 3 <b>clean</b> the <b>bathroom</b> | 10 make <b>dinner</b>                      |
| 4 <b>play</b> music                | 11 <b>stay</b> in a <b>hostel</b>          |
| 5 <b>right</b> and <b>wrong</b>    | 12 <b>what's</b> the <b>WiFi</b> password? |
| 6 do <b>exercise</b>               | 13 a <b>busy</b> street                    |
| 7 <b>take</b> the <b>lift</b>      | 14 <b>modern</b> art                       |

### 2 99 Listen and repeat the words.

### 3 Work in pairs. Don't look at the words.

Student A: say the number.

Student B: say the words.





a Rain on holiday



b People wait for their late flight.



# HOW WAS YOUR FLIGHT?

## VOCABULARY Problems

- Look at the photos (a–d). Say if each is a big problem or a small problem.
- 100** Listen and repeat the words. Tick (✓) the words you know.

late	no-one	problem	tired
noise	nowhere	rain	wrong

**V** For more about pronouns like *no-one* and *nowhere*, see page 140.

- Complete 1–8 with the words from Exercise 2.

- I have a \_\_\_\_\_ at work. I need to work late.
- I can't sleep. There's a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ outside my room.
- The weather's very bad. There's a lot of \_\_\_\_\_.
- The flight is two hours \_\_\_\_\_. We need to wait in the airport.
- We need help, but there's \_\_\_\_\_ here.
- There are a lot of people here. There's \_\_\_\_\_ to sit.
- I'm going to bed early. I'm very \_\_\_\_\_.
- We're going the \_\_\_\_\_ way. This isn't the right train!

- 101** Listen and check.

- Look at Exercise 3 again. Choose one problem you often have, one problem you sometimes have and one problem you never have.

*I need to work late: I often have this problem.*

## LISTENING

- 102** Dana meets Bryan at the airport. Choose the correct word(s), then listen and check.

A: Bryan. Great to see you!

B: Hi, Dana. <sup>1</sup>How / Who are you?

A: Great.

B: Sorry <sup>2</sup>we're / I'm late. There was a problem in London.

A: Don't worry. It was on the airport website.

B: Oh, good.

A: How was the flight?

B: <sup>3</sup>Very / Not very good. The weather was bad.

A: Oh, I'm sorry. Are you tired?

B: Yeah. Where are <sup>4</sup>you / we going now?

A: To the hotel and then we can have something to eat.

B: Oh, sorry. I had dinner on the plane. <sup>5</sup>I'm / I'm not hungry.

A: That's OK. <sup>6</sup>Do / Are you want to stay in the hotel?

B: Is that OK? I did a lot yesterday and I went to bed late.

A: Of course! We <sup>7</sup>can / are go out tomorrow.

B: Great. Thanks.

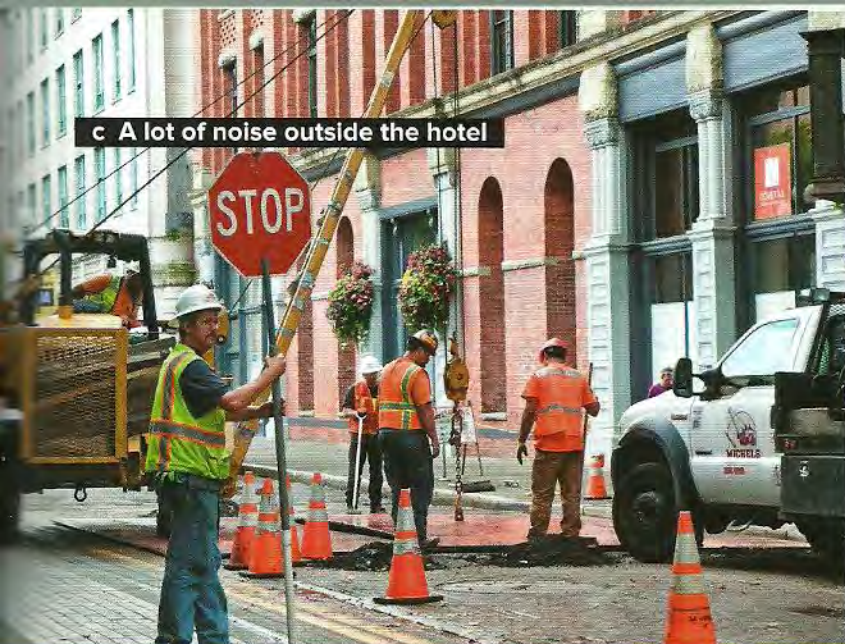
## GRAMMAR

### Past simple: common irregular verbs

Present	Past	
is	<b>was</b>	There <b>was</b> a problem in London.
are	<b>were</b>	We <b>were</b> late.
have/has	<b>had</b>	I <b>had</b> dinner on the plane.
go/goes	<b>went</b>	I <b>went</b> to bed late.
do/does	<b>did</b>	I <b>did</b> a lot yesterday.

- 103** Listen and repeat the past forms in the box.
- Work in pairs. Look at the verb list on page 138. Practise the conversation from Exercise 6.
- Complete the sentences with *did*, *had*, *was*, *were*, or *went*.
  - A: How was your day?  
B: Bad. I \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of problems at work.
  - A: How was your day?  
B: Good. I \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of work.
  - A: How was your flight?  
B: Bad. It \_\_\_\_\_ four hours late!





c A lot of noise outside the hotel



d Tired after a busy day

- 4 A: How was your journey?  
B: Bad. We \_\_\_\_\_ the wrong way. There was a lot of traffic.
- 5 A: How was your holiday?  
B: Great. We \_\_\_\_\_ very good weather. We \_\_\_\_\_ to the beach every day.
- 6 A: How was your hotel?  
B: Great. The rooms \_\_\_\_\_ very nice.
- 7 A: I \_\_\_\_\_ shopping yesterday.  
B: How was it?  
A: OK. It was busy.
- 8 A: I \_\_\_\_\_ a party last weekend. I was 25.  
B: How was it?  
A: Great. All my friends were there.

**10 Complete each sentence in two ways.**

I went to \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday / last night.  
I had \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday / last night.

**11 Tell your partner your sentences. Your partner asks *How was it?***

A: I went to the cinema yesterday.  
B: How was it?  
A: Good.

**G** For more practice, see Exercises 1 and 2 on page 124.

## DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS

### *Don't worry / That's OK*

A: Sorry, I'm late! There was a problem in London.  
B: **Don't worry!** I know.

A: Sorry. I'm not hungry.  
B: **That's OK.**

**12 Put the words in brackets in the correct order to make a second sentence.**

- Sorry I'm late. (had / at work / I / a problem)
- Sorry I'm late. (the wrong place / went to / I)
- Sorry I'm late. (on the bus / was / there / a problem)

**13 Take turns to say the sentences from Exercise 12. Reply with *don't worry* or *that's OK*.**

**14** **104 Listen and complete the sentences.**

- Sorry I \_\_\_\_\_ come to class on Monday.
- Sorry. I \_\_\_\_\_ have any money.
- Sorry. I \_\_\_\_\_ very early!
- Sorry the room \_\_\_\_\_ very big.
- Sorry. I \_\_\_\_\_ know the answer.

**15 Complete your own sentences.**

Sorry I'm late. \_\_\_\_\_  
*Sorry I'm late. I had a problem at home.*  
Sorry. \_\_\_\_\_  
*Sorry. I don't have my book.*

**16 Work in pairs. Say your sentences from Exercise 15 to different students. Reply.**

## CONVERSATION PRACTICE

**17 Write an answer to the questions. Use a dictionary if you need to.**

- How was your journey/flight?
- How was your day?
- How was your holiday?

**18 Work in pairs. Have conversations like this.**

Student A	Student B
Hi. How are you?	
[Answer]. Sorry I'm late.	[Answer] And you?
How was _____?	[Answer].
[Answer]	[Answer] How was _____?

**105** For more practice, listen to another example.



# WE LOVED IT

## REVIEW AND SPEAKING

- 1 Test each other on the words on page 51.
- 2 Ask and answer six *How* questions.
- How are you?                      How was the last class?  
How's work?                      How was your weekend?  
How do you get here?          How was your day yesterday?

## VOCABULARY Hotels and checking in

- 3 Complete the sentences with these words.

address	breakfast	lift	password
bags	check out	number	rooms
booking	key	passport	

- 1 Good evening. Do you have any \_\_\_\_\_ for tonight?
- 2 Hi. We have a \_\_\_\_\_. My name's Kim Jae-Sung.
- 3 Can I have your \_\_\_\_\_, please?
- 4 Can you write your name and \_\_\_\_\_ here? And sign here?
- 5 Do you need help with your \_\_\_\_\_?
- 6 Here's your key. Your room \_\_\_\_\_ is 351.
- 7 What time do we need to \_\_\_\_\_?
- 8 I'm sorry there's no \_\_\_\_\_. The stairs are over there.
- 9 What time is \_\_\_\_\_ in the morning?
- 10 What's the \_\_\_\_\_ for the WiFi?
- 4 ▶ 106 Listen and check your answers.
- 5 ▶ 107 Listen to someone checking in. Tick (✓) the sentences in Exercise 3 you hear.

- 6 ▶ 107 Listen again. What's the problem (a, b or c)?
- a The restaurant is closed.  
b He needs to pay for breakfast.  
c They don't have his booking.
- 7 Work in pairs. Practise the conversation.
- A: Hi.  
B: Hello. How can I help you?  
A: We have a booking. My name's [Name].  
B: OK. Yes. Can I have your passport?  
A: Sure.  
B: Can you write your name and address here? And sign here?  
A: Here? OK.  
B: Here's your key. Your room number is [Number].
- 8 Work in a new pair. Practise the conversation again, then continue the conversation. Use one or two questions from Exercise 3.

## READING AND GRAMMAR

- 9 Is each sentence (1–6) about a hotel or a hostel?
- 1 There were eight beds in each room.  
2 We shared a bathroom.  
3 It had four stars. It was \$190 a night.  
4 I talked to the other people in my room.  
5 There was a swimming pool on the top floor.  
6 We stayed in the best place in the city centre.
- 10 Look at the Grammar box on page 55. Notice how we form the regular past simple forms. Follow the rule to complete the other two sentences in the box.





## Regular past simple endings

Present Past

stay(s) stayed We **stayed** in the best place.

talk(s) talked He **talked** to us.

rain(s) \_\_\_\_\_ It \_\_\_\_\_ a lot.

share(s) shared We **shared** a bathroom.

love(s) \_\_\_\_\_ I \_\_\_\_\_ it.

**G** For more practice, see Exercises 1 and 2 on page 125.

- 11 Read about the three places in Costa Rica. Which do you like best?
- 12 Read again. Match sentences a–c with the three places in the text.
  - a The weather wasn't very good one day.
  - b There wasn't any noise.
  - c There were lots of people and it wasn't expensive.
- 13 Look at the words in **red**. Guess what they mean. Check in a dictionary.
- 14 Work in groups. Answer the questions.
  - Do you want to go to Costa Rica? Why? / Why not?
  - What places do you want to go to: in your country? in a different country?

## GRAMMAR

### Past simple negatives

Positive

Negative

There **were** a lot of people. There **weren't** a lot of people.

The weather **was** good. The weather **wasn't** good.

It **had** a restaurant. It **didn't have** a restaurant.

We **saw** a lot. We **didn't see** a lot.

- 15 Make the sentences negative.

- 1 It was a nice place.
- 2 We had a car.
- 3 We visited San José.
- 4 There were a lot of hotels.
- 5 There was a lot of noise.
- 6 It rained.

**G** For more practice, see Exercises 1 and 2 on page 125.

## WRITING

- 16 Write about a place you went to on holiday. Change the words in **red**. Add two more sentences with your own ideas.

I went to **Cairo**. I stayed there for **five** days.

I stayed in a **hotel** called the **Safari**.

It's **near** the **centre**.

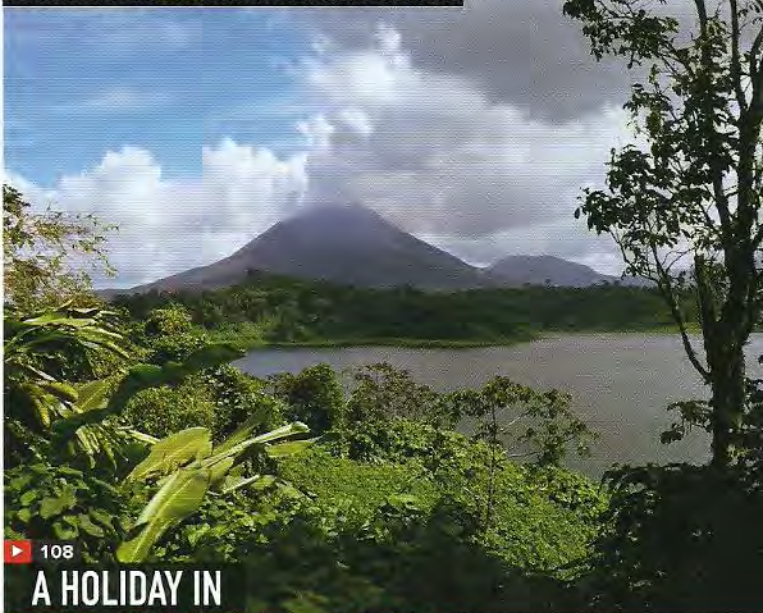
It was **cheap** but **nice**.

The weather **wasn't** good. It was very hot.

A forest and beach in Nosara



Arenal volcano and lake near Fortuna



▶ 108

### A HOLIDAY IN

## COSTA RICA

Tell us about your stay in Costa Rica.

### SELINA HOSTEL

\$9/night 4/5

I stayed in San José for six days. The hostel was good. It's near the city centre and the modern art museum. I shared a room with nine other people. The room was clean and the other people were nice to talk to. The café in the hostel was OK and sometimes there was a **band**.

### TIERRA MAGNÍFICA

\$365/night 5/5

We went to Nosara last December. We stayed in this small five-star place. It's in a forest, but you can see the beach from the hotel. There weren't a lot of people. It was quiet. The **service** and the food were great. We loved it.

### HOTEL REGINA

\$38/night 4/5

This great place is in the centre of Fortuna and we had a view of the Arenal Volcano from our room. We didn't have dinner in the hotel. There was a nice restaurant in the same street. One day, we did a **tour** of the volcano. It rained and we didn't see a lot. Another day we went swimming in a lake. It was beautiful.





People dance in the streets of Buenos Aires in Argentina.

# WHAT DID YOU DO?

## SPEAKING

### 1 Work in pairs. Say:

- the time of the day you like best: morning, afternoon, evening or night.
- one thing you usually do at each time of day and one thing you never do.
- the meal you like best: breakfast, lunch or dinner.
- one thing you usually have and one thing you always have for each meal.

## LISTENING

### 2 ▶ 109 Lucy and Dom are in a hostel. Listen to the first part of their conversation. Choose the correct word(s).

- 1 It's the *morning* / *evening*.
- 2 They talk about their *breakfast* / *dinner*.
- 3 They talk about what Lucy did *during the day* / *last night*.

### 3 ▶ 110 Listen to the first and second parts of the conversation. Put Lucy (L) or Dom (D) next to sentences 1–8.

- 1 I went to bed late. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 I went to bed early. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 I didn't eat a lot for breakfast. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 I didn't go out. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 I walked round the Old Town. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 I talked to some people after dinner. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 I danced a lot. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 I didn't feel well. \_\_\_\_\_

### 4 ▶ 111 Listen to the third part of the conversation. What are they doing today?

- a They are going shopping after breakfast.
- b They are going to the modern art museum together.
- c Dom is going to the modern art museum and Lucy is going to the beach.

### 5 Work in pairs. Discuss the questions. When you are on holiday:

- do you talk to other people? Who? Where? When?
- do you usually stay in a hostel or a hotel? In the city or near the beach?
- do you like: walks in the Old Town? / dancing? / modern art? / other museums?

### 6 ▶ 112 Listen to the questions from the conversation. Complete each question with one word.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ I sit here?
- 2 How \_\_\_\_\_ your breakfast?
- 3 What did you \_\_\_\_\_?
- 4 How \_\_\_\_\_ you? Did you sleep well?
- 5 What \_\_\_\_\_ you do?
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_ did you go?
- 7 \_\_\_\_\_ was it?
- 8 \_\_\_\_\_ it busy?
- 9 And you? What did you \_\_\_\_\_ last night?
- 10 \_\_\_\_\_ you OK now?
- 11 So, what \_\_\_\_\_ you doing today?
- 12 \_\_\_\_\_ you want to go together?
- 13 When are you \_\_\_\_\_?
- 14 \_\_\_\_\_ time is it now?





- 10** Complete the conversations about yesterday. Make questions with *did you* or *do you*.

- 1 A: I went shopping.  
B: \_\_\_\_\_ (What / buy?)
- 2 A: I went to work.  
B: \_\_\_\_\_ (Where / work?)
- 3 A: I went out.  
B: \_\_\_\_\_ (Where / go?)
- 4 A: I went to my classes at the university.  
B: \_\_\_\_\_ (What / study?)
- 5 A: I went to the beach.  
B: \_\_\_\_\_ (stay there all day?)
- 6 A: I stayed at home.  
B: \_\_\_\_\_ (What / do?)
- 7 A: I watched TV.  
B: \_\_\_\_\_ (What / see?)
- 8 A: I went to the gym.  
B: \_\_\_\_\_ (go every day?)

- 11** ▶ **114** Listen and check your answers.

- 12** Work in pairs. Take turns to start conversations from Exercise 10. Add answers to the questions.

- 1 A: I went shopping.  
B: What did you buy?  
A: Some clothes.

- 13** Think of your answers to these questions.

- What did you do yesterday? last weekend?
- What did you do on your last holiday?

- 14** Ask and answer the questions from Exercise 13. Ask other questions to get more information.

- A: What did you do yesterday?  
B: I went to work.  
A: What do you do?

## GRAMMAR

### Past simple questions

What		do (last night / yesterday)? have (for breakfast/dinner)?
Where	<b>did you</b>	go?
What time		go to bed? get here?
	<b>Did you</b>	sleep well? go out (last night)?

How **was** it?  
Was it busy?  
Were you tired?

- 7** ▶ **113** Learn to say these questions. Listen and repeat what you hear.

What did you do last night?  
What did you do yesterday?

- 8** Ask different people in the class the two questions from Exercise 7.

- 9** Who in the class did one of these things?

- went to work/classes
- did some exercise/sport
- stayed at home
- met a friend / some friends
- went out
- watched TV
- went shopping

**G** For more practice, see Exercises 1–4 on page 125.

## PRONUNCIATION AND REVIEW

- 15** ▶ **115** Listen to the sentences. They are fast. Write the missing word.

- 1 How was your \_\_\_\_\_?
- 2 I had a very busy \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 We stayed in a \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 We had a great view of the \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 What's the password for the \_\_\_\_\_?
- 6 What did you do last \_\_\_\_\_?
- 7 I met some \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8 I went to the \_\_\_\_\_.

- 16** Work in pairs. Say the sentences from Exercise 15, but change the last word.

- 17** Try to remember the answers in Exercise 6.

- 18** Work in pairs. In one minute say:

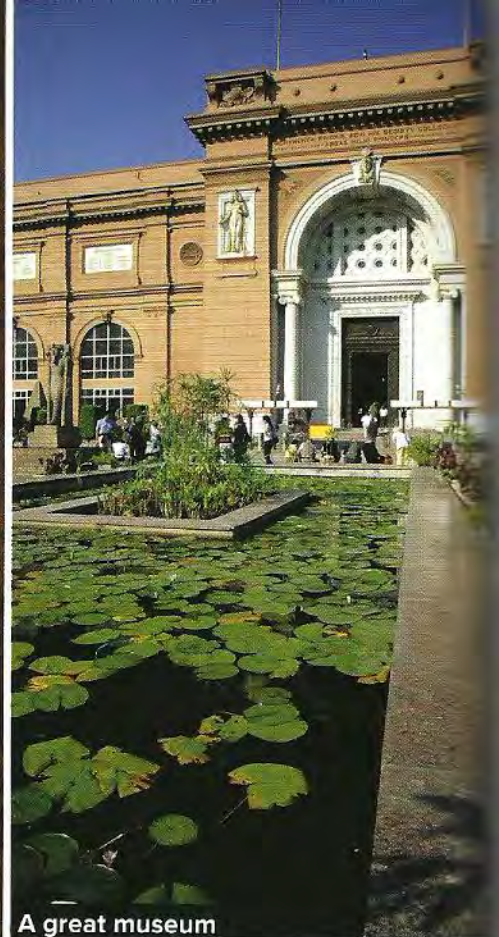
- past verbs
- words about problems

**G** For more revision and pronunciation, see Exercises 1–4 on page 126.



# VIDEO 3

## ANCIENT LAND



A very big library

A very old temple

A great museum

### 1 Look at the photos. Discuss the questions.

- Do you know a country where you can see all these things?
- Do you know the place well?
- What else can you see there?

### 2 Watch the video. Complete the table with the words.

Alexandria	cafés	great art	mosques
beach	Cairo	Luxor	pyramids

City	Famous sight	Other things to see
	the museum	
	the library	
	the temple	

### 3 Watch the video again. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false ones.

- Around twelve million people live in Cairo.
- You can see Pharaoh Tutankhamun at the Egyptian Museum.
- There are seventeen pyramids in Egypt.
- The pyramids at Saqqara are five thousand years old.

- It takes four hours by train to get to Alexandria from Cairo.
- The library has books in Arabic, French and German.
- Luxor is in the north of the country.
- Before it was called Thebes and it was the capital of Egypt.

### 4 Match the verbs (1–6) with the words and phrases (a–f) to make phrases from the video.

- |          |                            |
|----------|----------------------------|
| 1 see    | a on the beach             |
| 2 rent   | b big temples              |
| 3 take   | c great art                |
| 4 relax  | d the sun go down          |
| 5 build  | e a boat                   |
| 6 create | f three hours to get there |

### 5 Watch the video again to check your answers.

## SPEAKING

### 6 Work in pairs. Discuss the questions.

- Do you want to visit Egypt?
- What are the three best towns or cities to visit in your country?
- What can you see and do in each place?



# REVIEW 3

## GRAMMAR

### 1 Choose the correct word(s).

- 1 *Is / Are* there any good places to eat near here?
- 2 There *is / are* a nice Italian restaurant in the main square.
- 3 *Did / Were* you go out last night?
- 4 What *you are doing / are you doing* after class?
- 5 I went to Denmark. The weather *wasn't / weren't / didn't* good.
- 6 It wasn't busy. There *weren't / wasn't / didn't* a lot of people there.
- 7 *There are / There is / Have* lots of good shops in this area.
- 8 I'm going *play / for to play / to play* football this afternoon.

### 2 Complete the text with the past simple of the verbs.

Last year I <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (go) on holiday to Tunisia. It <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (be) great. We <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (stay) in a small village near the beach. Our rooms <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (be) very nice and there <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (not / be) a lot of noise. There <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (not / be) a lot of people there. Every evening we <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (have) dinner in a very nice restaurant and it <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (not / rain) for a week. We <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (talk) to lots of very nice people. I <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (love) it. I want to go again.

### 3 Write questions to complete the conversations. Use the words in brackets.

- 1 A: \_\_\_\_\_? (where / you / go)  
B: Home. I'm tired. I need to sleep.
- 2 A: \_\_\_\_\_ after class? (what / you / do)  
B: I'm going to meet a friend. We're going to see a film.
- 3 A: Kenzo is going to have a party on Friday.  
B: I know. \_\_\_\_\_? (you / go)  
A: Yes, I am.
- 4 A: \_\_\_\_\_ last night? (what / you / do)  
B: We went out. It was fun. I didn't sleep a lot!  
A: \_\_\_\_\_? (where / you / go)  
B: We went to see a band. They were great.

### 4 ▶ 116 Listen and complete the sentences.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ to the museum yesterday?
- 2 I'm \_\_\_\_\_ some friends this afternoon.
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ good places to eat in Kalamaki.
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ to bed last night?
- 5 We \_\_\_\_\_ good weather on Saturday. We \_\_\_\_\_ the beach.

- 5 ▶ 116 Work in pairs. Compare your answers. Listen again to check.

## VOCABULARY

### 6 Match the verbs in the box with the correct groups of words (1–8).

get	have	play	stay
go	need	see	take

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ a film / some interesting art
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ the blue line / the lift
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ at home / in a hostel
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ a walk / a party
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ to bed late / swimming
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_ a taxi / a great view
- 7 \_\_\_\_\_ football / some music
- 8 \_\_\_\_\_ to study tonight / some more money

### 7 Put the words into three groups: buying tickets, hotels or problems.

a lot of rain	nowhere to sit	return
a lot of traffic	passport	second class
check out	password	single
key	platform	the wrong way

### 8 Complete the text with these words.

change	get off	long	take
costs	line	metro	wait

I usually <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ the train to work. The <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ here is expensive, but it's good. I usually <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ three or four minutes for my train. I take the red <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ and then I <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ trains at Holborn. I <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ at Green Park. It doesn't take <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ – about thirty minutes most days – and it <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ about £150 a month.

### 9 Complete the sentences with these verbs.

clean	enter	sleep	walk
do	pay	visit	write

- 1 Is it far? Can we \_\_\_\_\_ there?
- 2 Is there a park near here? I want to \_\_\_\_\_ some exercise.
- 3 Here's the machine. Can you \_\_\_\_\_ your number, please?
- 4 Can you \_\_\_\_\_ your name and address here, please?
- 5 We're going to \_\_\_\_\_ the museum in the Old Town this afternoon.
- 6 I'm sorry. There's a problem with the bathroom. Can you \_\_\_\_\_ it, please?
- 7 Can I \_\_\_\_\_ by card?
- 8 Good morning. Did you \_\_\_\_\_ well?



7

# GOING OUT AND STAYING IN







## IN THIS UNIT YOU LEARN HOW TO:

- talk about activities you like
- say what you like doing or prefer
- talk about books, TV and music
- talk about people and things from other countries
- talk about clothes you want to buy
- ask and give opinions

## WORDS FOR UNIT 7

### 1 Look at the words and photos.

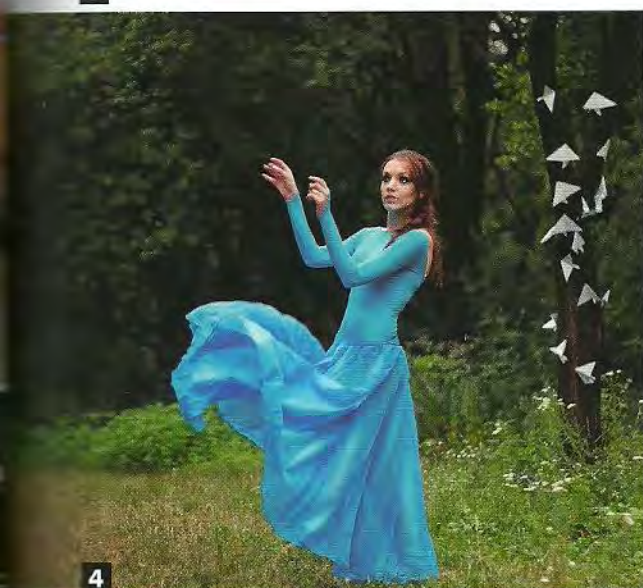
- |                          |                      |
|--------------------------|----------------------|
| 1 go to a concert        | 8 read a story       |
| 2 take an exam           | 9 sell magazines     |
| 3 sports                 | 10 her favourite toy |
| 4 a long dress           | 11 half price        |
| 5 a basketball player    | 12 an Italian dish   |
| 6 give someone a present | 13 sing a song       |
| 7 try on a jacket        | 14 a team            |

### 2 117 Listen and repeat the words.

### 3 Work in pairs. Don't look at the words.

Student A: say the number.

Student B: say the words.






# I LOVE GOING OUT

## SPEAKING

- 1 Work in pairs. What is the past form of the verbs in the box?

cook	go out	read something
do some exercise	go shopping	watch football
go on the internet	listen to music	watch TV

- 2  118 Listen and check.

- 3 Work in pairs. Say which activities in the box you did. Check the verb table on page 138 if you need to.

- last night
- yesterday
- last weekend

*I read something in the newspaper last night.*

*I went shopping last weekend.*

## VOCABULARY Words for activities

- 4 Match each group of words (1–9) with an activity from Exercise 1.

- a favourite writer / stories / a magazine  
read something
- a singer / a band / a song  
listen to music
- Italian food / a favourite dish / make cakes  
cook
- go running / play basketball / go to the gym  
do some exercise
- a game / my team / a great player  
watch football
- go to concerts / go dancing / go to the cinema  
go out
- try on some clothes / buy something / like the design  
go shopping
- a series / the news / a programme about art  
watch TV
- look at Facebook / a website / watch videos  
go on the internet

- 5 Complete the conversations with words from Exercise 4. Use one word in each space.

- A: I love reading.  
B: Do you have a favourite \_\_\_\_\_?  
A: Yes. Arturo Pérez-Reverte. I love his books.  
They're great \_\_\_\_\_.
- A: I like K-pop.  
B: Me too. My favourite \_\_\_\_\_ is Chungha.  
A: Yeah, she's OK. Her \_\_\_\_\_ 'Why don't you know' is good.
- A: What do you normally cook?  
B: I make a lot of Mexican \_\_\_\_\_. My best \_\_\_\_\_ is tamales. It's very good!
- A: Do you go out a lot?  
B: Yes. I love music. I go to a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ and I often \_\_\_\_\_ dancing at the weekend.
- A: What did you do last night?  
B: I watched TV. I watched the \_\_\_\_\_ and then there was a great \_\_\_\_\_ about modern art.
- A: I love football.  
B: Me too. Did you watch the \_\_\_\_\_ last night?  
A: Yes. I love Leroy Sané. He's a great \_\_\_\_\_.

- 6 Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions. Do you have a favourite:

- song?
- band?
- series?
- player?
- team?
- website?
- shop?





## GRAMMAR

### like + -ing

I	like	
We	love	reading.
They	don't like	listening to music.
She/He	likes	doing exercise.
My son	loves	watching football.
Dan	doesn't like	
		playing football? Yes.
	Do you like	cooking? It's OK.
		reading? Not really.

Remember we can also use *like* + noun. See page 20.

### 7 Tick the sentences that are right (✓). Change the sentences that are wrong.

- I don't like coffee. ✓
- Do you like walk? ✗ Do you like walking?
- I love play football.
- My daughter loves sport.
- I love cooking.
- Do you like drive?
- Do you like your job?
- My husband doesn't like go to the gym, but I love it.

### 8 Write six questions with *Do you like ...-ing?* Use a dictionary if you need to.

### 9 Work in groups. Take turns to ask and answer your questions.

**G** For more practice, see Exercises 1–3 on page 127.

## LISTENING

### 10 ▶ 119 Listen to the start of three conversations. What did each woman do last night?

- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_

### 11 ▶ 120 Listen to the three conversations. Choose the correct information about the woman in each conversation.

#### Conversation 1

- She likes *cooking / going out for dinner*.
- She doesn't have a favourite dish, but she likes *Russian / Mexican* food.

#### Conversation 2

- She likes watching *the news / programmes about art*.
- She likes the series called *WarGames / The Crown*.

#### Conversation 3

- She plays basketball and she sometimes goes *running / swimming*.
- Her favourite team is *Real Madrid / Atlético Madrid*.

## DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS

### Me too and I prefer

*Me too* means I like or do the same thing as you.

*I prefer* means I like a different thing more.

A: I love cooking.

B: **Me too.** What do you cook?

A: I like Real Madrid.

B: **I prefer** Atlético Madrid.

A: Do you like playing sport?

B: I love it, but **I prefer** watching it.

### 12 Complete the replies with *Me too* or *I prefer ...*

- I like Rihanna.  
\_\_\_\_\_. I love her songs.
- I look at Facebook a lot.  
\_\_\_\_\_ Snapchat.
- I go out a lot.  
\_\_\_\_\_ staying at home.
- I love going shopping.  
\_\_\_\_\_. Where do you normally go?
- My favourite food is Chinese.  
I like Chinese food, too, but \_\_\_\_\_ Mexican.

### 13 Work in pairs. Say the sentences in Exercise 12. Give true answers with *Me too* or *I prefer*.

## CONVERSATION PRACTICE

### 14 Write what you did last night on a piece of paper. Give it to your partner.

### 15 Read what your partner did. Complete two or more of these questions to ask your partner.

Do you like ...? Do you have a favourite ...?

Do you ... a lot? What do you normally ...?

### 16 Have conversations like this.

Student A	Student B
What did you do last night?	[Answer]
Do you like ...? / Do you ... a lot?	[Answer]
Do you have a favourite ...?	
OR	
What do you normally ...?	[Answer]
Me too. / I prefer ...	And you? What did you do last night?
[Continue]	

**▶ 121** For more practice, listen to another example.



# WHAT ARE YOU READING?

## REVIEW AND SPEAKING

### 1 Work in pairs.

1 Say an activity (*cooking*). Your partner says three words to talk about the activity (*cook, food, dish*). Take turns.

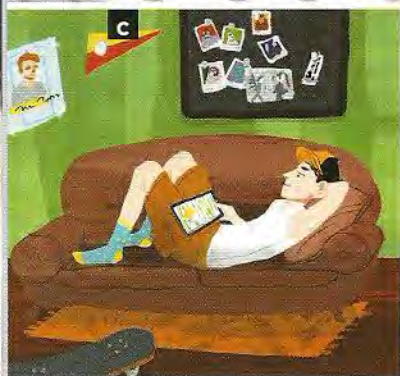
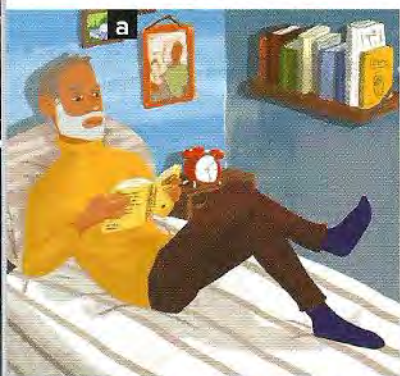
2 Write something you:

- did last week.
- you normally do at the weekend.
- you are going to do next week / next month.

Take turns to tell your partner. Ask one or more questions about it.

## LISTENING

### 2 122 Listen. Match the conversations (1–4) with the pictures (a–d).



### 3 122 Listen again. Tick (✓) the sentences that are true for the man in each conversation.

Conversation 1 a I'm reading a magazine. ☒ X  
b I read a lot.

Conversation 2 a The band are very good.  
b I usually listen to Spanish music.

Conversation 3 a I'm watching a film.  
b It's not very good.

Conversation 4 a I'm studying.  
b I have an important meeting tomorrow.

### 4 122 Listen again and read the conversations on page 156 to check your answers.

## GRAMMAR

### Present continuous (I'm and are you ...?)

We use present continuous for activities **now** or **at the moment** (and not with *every day, always, usually*, etc.)

What **are you** *doing?*  
*reading?*  
*watching?*  
*making?*

**Are you** *reading* *anything good at the moment?*

**I'm** *doing* *some work.*

**I am** *watching* *TV.*

### 5 Complete the questions. Use the present continuous form of the verbs.

1 A: What \_\_\_\_\_? (you / listen to)

B: Nicky Jam. Do you know him?

2 A: \_\_\_\_\_ a great series at the moment. (I / watch)

B: Oh yes? What's it called?

3 A: What \_\_\_\_\_? (you / do)

B: Nothing much. \_\_\_\_\_ at Facebook. (I / look)

4 A: \_\_\_\_\_ dinner? (you / make)

B: Yes.

A: What \_\_\_\_\_? (you / cook)

B: A vegetarian dish called ragu.

### 6 Work in pairs. Student A: look at File 4 on page 145.

**Student A:** act one of the activities. Don't say anything.

**Student B:** ask *What are you doing / reading / listening to / making*, etc.?

**Student A:** answer.

### 7 Student B: look at File 10 on page 147. Change roles and repeat Exercise 6.

 For more practice, see Exercises 1–3 on page 127.

## VOCABULARY Country adjectives

I'm listening to a **French** band called Superbus.



**French** = from France

I listen to a lot of **Brazilian** music.



**Brazilian** = from Brazil.



- 8 ▶ 123 Listen and repeat the adjectives in the questions.

- 1 Do you know any **Japanese** writers?
- 2 Do you know any **American** bands?
- 3 Do you know any **British** singers?
- 4 Do you know any **Chinese** companies?
- 5 Do you know any **Spanish** actors?
- 6 Do you know any **Egyptian** cities?



- 9 Work in groups. How many of the questions from Exercise 8 can you answer?

- 10 Write five similar questions with *Do you know...?* to test other groups in the class. (You need to know an answer!)

V For more country adjectives, see page 139.

- 11 Ask your questions. Which group gets the most points?

## READING

- 12 Read what four people think about books. Match sentences 1–4 with the four people in the text.

- 1 I'm learning to read. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 I prefer to read about real life. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 I read when my teacher gives me a book, but I don't like it. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 I'm reading two different books at the moment. \_\_\_\_\_

- 13 Find the name of three books in the text. Then answer the questions.

- 1 Do the people think they are good books?
- 2 Do you know the books? Do you like them?

▶ 124

# ARE YOU A BIG READER?

## CAMILA, ARGENTINA

I don't really like reading, but we need to read some books for school. At the **moment**, we're reading a **famous** book called *The Mad Toy*. It's by an Argentinian writer. I don't really like it. It's **sad**.

## ZEYNEP, TURKEY

I love reading. I normally finish one book a week or more. I sometimes read two or three books at the same time. At the moment, I'm reading a book **called** *Three Daughters of Eve* by Elif Şafak. It's a story **about** a woman from Istanbul and her two friends. It's great – maybe her best book. Elif Şafak is my favourite writer. I'm also reading a book about the government. It's OK.

## DON, NEW ZEALAND

I don't read books and stories very much. I usually read the news or read magazines. I sometimes read books about business or **politics**, but I'm not reading anything at the moment.

- 14 Complete the sentences with one of the words in **red**. There are two you don't need.

- 1 I sometimes read books about politics or about \_\_\_\_\_ people.
- 2 At the \_\_\_\_\_, I'm reading a famous French book called *The Stranger* by Albert Camus.
- 3 At school, we read a book \_\_\_\_\_ *Matilda*. It was my favourite book. It's a story \_\_\_\_\_ a girl who loves reading.
- 4 It's a \_\_\_\_\_ good book, but it's very \_\_\_\_\_. It's about a man who's in prison.

## SPEAKING

- 15 Work in groups. Discuss the questions.

- Do you read a lot?
- Are you reading anything at the moment? What? Is it good?
- What books did you read at school? Did you like them?

## WRITING

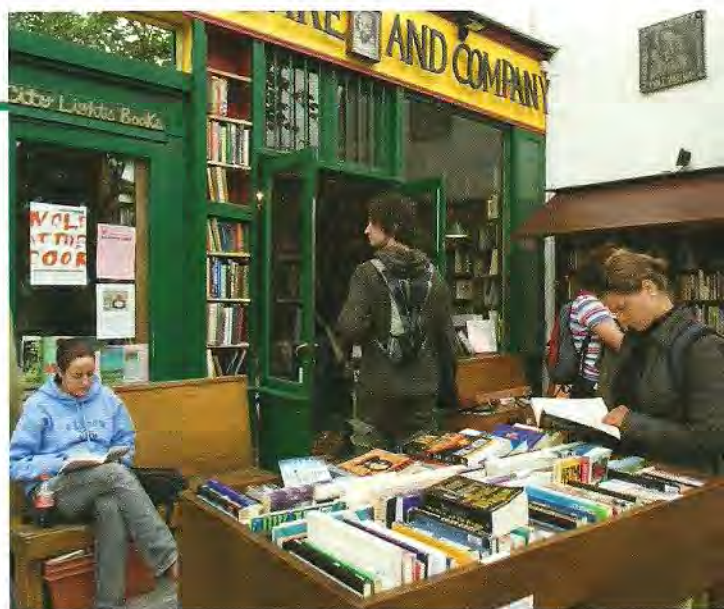
- 16 Write three or four sentences about you and what you read or watch on TV.

I watch TV a lot.

I normally watch series.

At the moment, I'm **watching** an old **series** called *Orange is the New Black*. It's about **some women** in prison. It's **really good**.

My favourite **programme** is *Black Mirror*.



## DARREN, UK

I had a lot of problems at school and after school. I'm now in **prison**. I can't read very well, but I'm having lessons. My teacher is very good. I sometimes read and listen to stories at the same time. It helps me. At the moment, I'm reading and listening to *Animal Farm* by George Orwell. It's a **really** good story. I really like it.





a jumper



a shirt



a T-shirt



a top



trousers



a skirt



a hat



trainers



socks

# THIS ONE LOOKS GOOD

## SPEAKING

### 1 Work in groups. Discuss the questions.

- Do you like shopping?
- How often do you go shopping? Where do you go?
- How often do you buy things online (on the internet)?
- How often do you buy these things? Do you buy them online or in a shop?

clothes for me      food for the week      shoes  
clothes for the family      presents for my friends and family

## VOCABULARY Buying clothes

### 2 ▶ 125 Listen and repeat the words.

12	the design	jeans
25% (twenty-five percent) off	a dress	long
38	extra large	looks good
blue	feels comfortable	small
brown	green	a T-shirt
a coat	half price	white
	a jacket	yellow

### 3 Put the words and phrases from Exercise 2 in the right list.

Colour	Size	Clothes	Reason to buy
black	large	shoes	cheap

### 4 Add one more word to each list. Then in groups, compare the words you added.

### 5 How many of the words from Exercise 2 can you see in photos a and b?

### 6 For you, are these very important or not very important when you buy clothes:

- the price?
- how they look?
- how they feel?
- the designer or shop?



For more colours, see page 139.

## LISTENING

### 7 ▶ 126 Listen to three conversations in a shop. Match two of them with photos a and b.



### 8 ▶ 126 Listen again. Which conversation (1, 2 or 3) are these sentences from? Write the number.

- What do you think of the blue and red one? \_\_\_\_\_
- They look nice, but they feel a bit small. \_\_\_\_\_
- I'm not sure about the colour. \_\_\_\_\_
- Do you have these in 44? \_\_\_\_\_
- How much is it? \_\_\_\_\_
- I'm just looking. \_\_\_\_\_



GRAMMAR

this/these, one/ones

Singular	Plural
Can I try <b>this</b> (one)?	Can I try <b>these</b> (ones)?
<b>This</b> looks good.	<b>These</b> look good.
<b>This</b> top is nice.	<b>These</b> shoes <b>are</b> nice.
The blue <b>one</b> looks good.	The red <b>ones</b> are best.
I prefer the green <b>one</b> .	I prefer the brown <b>ones</b> .

- 9 Look at the Grammar box. Choose the correct word(s) in 1–8.
- 1 A: What do you think of *this / these* jeans?  
B: They're a bit big.
- 2 A: *This / These* feels a bit small. What size is it?  
B: Medium. Try this *one / ones*. It's a large.
- 3 A: What do you think of this *shirt / shirts*?  
B: I don't like the colour. I prefer the green *this / one*.
- 4 A: What do you think?  
B: They're really comfortable. I prefer *this / these* ones. The other *these / ones* didn't feel good.
- 5 A: I like this T-shirt. What do you think?  
B: It's OK, but I prefer *the blue one / this blue*.
- 6 A: What do you think of these *shoe / shoes*? They're half price!  
B: I don't really like them. I don't like the design.
- 7 A: Are there any toilets?  
B: There's one on *this / one* floor for women and the men's *one / ones* is on the top floor.
- 8 A: Do you sell children's clothes here?  
B: Not in *this / these* shop, but the *one / ones* in Soroya Street sells them.

**G** For more practice, see Exercise 1 on page 128.




DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS

Opinions

Asking what people think.

**What do you think (of the top)?**

Saying what you think.

-  It's **really** nice. I **really** like the colour.
-  It's OK, **but** I'm **not** sure **about** the design.  
It's OK, **but** it's **a bit** small.
-  I **don't** really like it. I don't like the colour.

- 10 Complete the sentences with **bold** words from the box. Use one word in each space.

- 1 A: What do you \_\_\_\_\_ of these jeans?  
B: They're OK, but they're a \_\_\_\_\_ big.
- 2 A: What do you think \_\_\_\_\_ this shirt?  
B: It's nice. I really like the colour.
- 3 A: What do you think?  
B: I don't \_\_\_\_\_ like it. Sorry! I prefer the red one.
- 4 A: What do you think?  
B: It's OK. I like the design, but I'm not \_\_\_\_\_ about the colour. Do they have it in blue?


- 11 Work in pairs. Discuss what you think of the clothes on page 66.

- 12 Change partners. You are in a shop. Use your ideas from Exercise 11 to have conversations like these.

Student A	Student B
What do you think (of this/these)?	[Answer] How much is it / are they?
[Say a price]	That's good / OK / a bit expensive.
What do you think of the (size/design/colour)?	[Answer.] Try it/them and see.

- 13 Say which clothes from page 66 you are going to buy.

PRONUNCIATION AND REVIEW

- 14  127 Listen to the sentences. They are fast. Write the missing word or words.

- 1 Do you like \_\_\_\_\_?
- 2 Did you watch \_\_\_\_\_ last night?
- 3 I'm \_\_\_\_\_ a lot at the moment.
- 4 It's a really good Japanese \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 What are you \_\_\_\_\_?
- 6 What do you think of \_\_\_\_\_?
- 7 They are my favourite \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8 What do you normally \_\_\_\_\_?

- 15 Work in pairs. Say the sentences from Exercise 14 but change one word.
- 16 Do the Conversation practice on page 63 again.
- 17 Work in pairs. In one minute say:
- country adjectives
  - colours
  - clothes

**G** For more revision and pronunciation, see Exercises 1–3 on page 128.



8

# HERE AND THERE



1



2



4



6



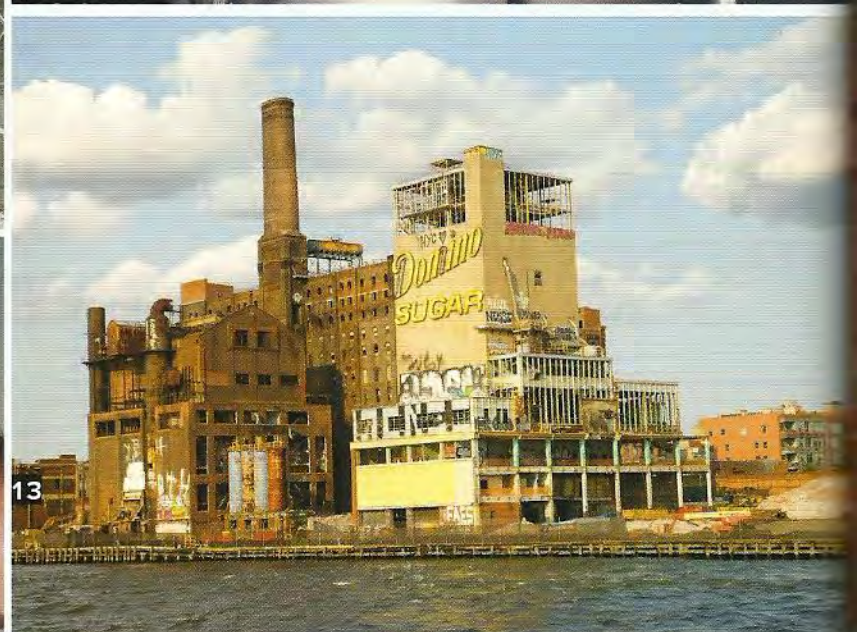
11



7



12



13





## IN THIS UNIT YOU LEARN HOW TO:

- talk about what people are doing
- explain why someone isn't there
- talk about houses and rooms
- ask about things you can't find
- talk about working at home



## WORDS FOR UNIT 8

### 1 Look at the words and photos.

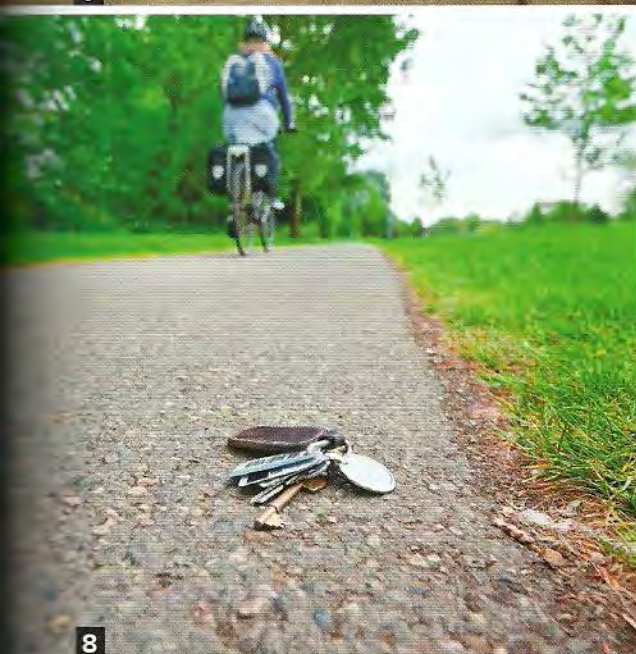
- |                      |                                 |
|----------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1 carpets            | 8 leave my keys in the park     |
| 2 it's not working   | 9 chairs                        |
| 3 draw a picture     | 10 lost                         |
| 4 wear glasses       | 11 leave the dishes in the sink |
| 5 law                | 12 I can't remember             |
| 6 they look similar  | 13 an old factory               |
| 7 look in the fridge | 14 work hard                    |

### 2 128 Listen and repeat the words.

### 3 Work in pairs. Don't look at the words.

Student A: say the number.

Student B: say the words.





# WHERE IS EVERYONE?

## VOCABULARY Collocations

**Collocations** are words that usually go together. In English, *take* goes together with *the bus*, *a photo* or *a break*. In your language, maybe you can use the same verb with these three nouns, or maybe you can't. Different languages often have different collocations.

- 1 Match the verbs in the box with the words and phrases 1–7.

get make meet study take travel work

- 1 take an exam / take a friend to the airport / take a coat with me
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ hard / \_\_\_\_\_ in a factory / \_\_\_\_\_ at home.
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ Law at university / \_\_\_\_\_ hard / \_\_\_\_\_ for an exam
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ to Japan / \_\_\_\_\_ a long way / \_\_\_\_\_ a lot for work
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of money / \_\_\_\_\_ a list / \_\_\_\_\_ something to eat

6 \_\_\_\_\_ a client / \_\_\_\_\_ someone / \_\_\_\_\_ in a café

7 \_\_\_\_\_ a coffee / a new job / something to eat

- 2 ▶ 129 Listen to the seven sentences. Tick (✓) the collocations you hear from Exercise 1.
- 3 Work in pairs. Make one more collocation with each verb in the box from Exercise 1.
- 4 Use collocations from Exercise 1 to make true sentences:  
a about you. b about friends. c about your family.
- 5 Work in groups. Say your sentences.  
*I studied Law at Warsaw University. I finished in 2012.*  
*My friend Almir travels to lots of countries. He plays in a band.*  
*My mum's a nurse. She works hard.*

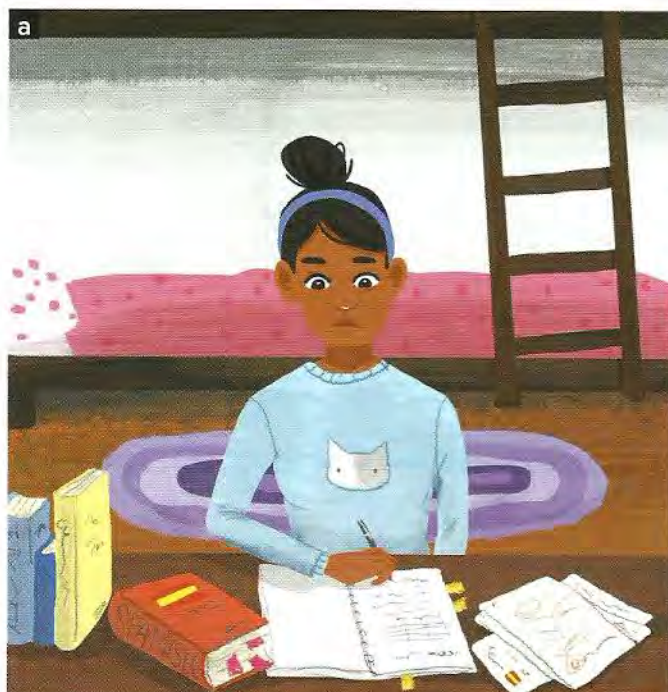
## LISTENING

- 6 ▶ 130 Listen to three conversations. Match who they talk about in conversations 1–3 with pictures a–c.

Conversation 1: Picture \_\_\_\_\_

Conversation 2: Picture \_\_\_\_\_

Conversation 3: Picture \_\_\_\_\_





# I CAN'T FIND MY KEYS

## REVIEW AND SPEAKING

### 1 Work in pairs. Choose two.

- Test each other on the words on pages 69 and 70.
- Say three more words that go with each of the verbs from page 70.

*meet my brother, meet some friends ...*

- Have conversations. Start with this question. Continue it in six different ways.

Where's Su? Is she coming with us now?

A: No. She's doing some work.

B: Yes. She's just having a shower.

## VOCABULARY In the house

### 2 Which of these things can you see in the photos?

a bed	a chair	a fridge	a shower	a sofa
a carpet	a cupboard	a shelf	a sink	a table

### 3 ▶ 134 Listen and repeat the names of the rooms and furniture.

### 4 Work in pairs. Say one more thing in each room.

### 5 Work in pairs. Ask and answer what you think of the rooms and furniture in the photos.

A: What do you think of the kitchen?

B: It's nice / It's OK. It's a bit ...

A: What do you think of the sofa?

B: I like / don't like the design. It looks ...

### 6 Change partner. Discuss the questions.

- Which room in the photos do you like best? Why?
- Are any of the rooms in your home similar to these?
- What's your favourite room in *your* home? Why?

### 7 ▶ 135 Listen to four conversations. Complete the table.

	I can't find...	Which room?	Where in room?
1	my glasses	bathroom	
2			carpet
3	keys		
4			

### 8 ▶ 135 Listen again. Complete the sentences with the prepositions.

- I saw them \_\_\_\_\_ the bathroom – \_\_\_\_\_ the sink.
- Maybe it's \_\_\_\_\_ the shelf \_\_\_\_\_ the living room. I saw it there.
- Oh, look. It's there. \_\_\_\_\_ the carpet \_\_\_\_\_ the bed.
- Oh, look. There they are. \_\_\_\_\_ the sofa.
- Maybe I left it \_\_\_\_\_ the kitchen.
- Yes, it was \_\_\_\_\_ the table.



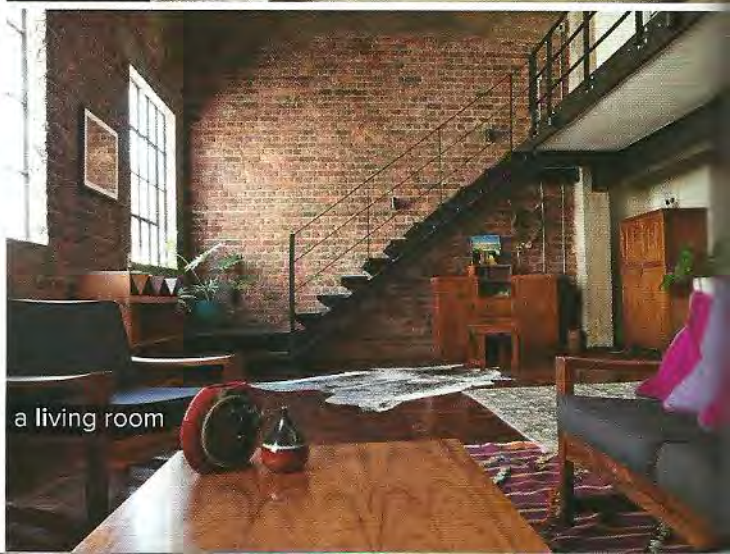
a kitchen



a bathroom



a bedroom



a living room



- 9 Work in pairs. Answer the questions.
- Do you know the present form of the verbs in red from Exercise 8?
  - Where do you usually put these things when you're not using them? Use a dictionary if you need to.

bag	keys	passport	shoes
coat	money and cards	phone	

## DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS

### Maybe

We use *maybe* when we're not sure.

*Maybe* it's on the shelf in the living room.

*Maybe* I left it in my bedroom.

- 10 Look at the questions. Change any words in red to make questions to ask your partner.

- Where did you last use **your phone**?
- When did you last see **your parents**?
- How far is **your work** from here?
- How long does it normally take to make **your dinner**?
- Where's **Peter** today?
- How often do you **go swimming**?

- 11 Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions.

A: *Where did you last use your phone?*

B: *I can't remember. Maybe on the bus.*

## LISTENING

- 12 ▶ 136 Listen to Ella and Lucian. Choose the correct word or phrase.
- He's looking for his **keys / glasses / phone**.
  - Maybe he left something in **a restaurant / in the kitchen / in a taxi**.
  - He's going to **visit / email / phone**.
- 13 ▶ 137 Listen to the first part of Lucian's conversation with the restaurant. Put the questions (a–e) in the order you hear them (1–5).

- Can you wait one minute? \_\_\_\_\_
- And what time were you here? \_\_\_\_\_
- How can I help you? \_\_\_\_\_
- Where did you sit? Can you remember? \_\_\_\_\_
- What colour are they? \_\_\_\_\_

- 14 ▶ 137 Listen again. Write the answers to the questions from Exercise 13.

- 15 ▶ 138 Listen to the second part of the conversation. Answer the questions.

- Do they find them? Where?
- What's the last problem?

- 16 Write true sentences about things you lost.

I lost my phone once. I left it on the table in a café.

I lost my passport once. I don't know how. Maybe I left it in the hotel room.

- 17 Work in pairs. Talk about the things you lost. Ask and answer another question. Use one of these:

- Did you find it?
- What did you do?
- Was it expensive?

## GRAMMAR

- 18 Complete the information in the Grammar box.

### Personal pronouns

#### Subject pronoun

*I left my bag on the bus.*

*You're late.*

*It's in the bathroom.*

\_\_\_\_\_ 's nice.

\_\_\_\_\_ lives here.

\_\_\_\_\_ went to  
the park.

*They're on the table.*

#### Object pronoun

*Can you help \_\_\_\_\_?*

*Can I talk to \_\_\_\_\_.*

*When did you last have  
\_\_\_\_\_?*

*I really like **him**.*

*I didn't see **her** there.*

*He took **us** there.*

*When did you last have  
\_\_\_\_\_?*

- 19 Choose the correct words.

- I can't find my ticket. Maybe I left **him / it** in the bathroom.
- A: Hi. I'm here to get my phone.  
B: Can you see the young woman in the office? Talk to **him / her**. She has it.
- My name's Juan Martínez. When you come to the shop, ask for **her / me**.
- A: I can't find my new trainers.  
B: Well, where did you last have **it / them**?
- I wasn't here yesterday. David was. He's there. You need to ask **him / her**.
- Hello. How can I help **you / them**?



For more practice, see Exercises 1 and 2 on page 130.

## SPEAKING

- 20 Work in pairs. Student A: you work in a hotel. Student B: you left something there. Take turns. Have conversations like this:

Student A	Student B
Hello. Hotel [name]. How can I help you?	[Explain what you left there. Say when.]
What colour ...?	[Answer]
What time were you here?	[Answer. Use <i>I don't know</i> .] Maybe ...
Where do you think ...?	[Answer. Use <i>I'm not sure</i> .] Maybe ...
Say if you find the thing(s) or not.	[Respond]



# WORKING AT HOME

## SPEAKING

1 Work in pairs. Look at the photos of homeworkers. Discuss the questions.


- Where are the people? Where are they from?
- What are they doing?
- What are their jobs?

*She's in the living room. I think she's American or maybe she's British.*

## READING

2 Work in pairs. Read about homeworkers together. Try to complete the text with these words and phrases.

45%	the bathroom	the living room	travel
10%	good	make clothes	
bad	listening to music	teachers	

3  139 Listen and check your answers.

4 Look at the words in red. Guess what they mean. Check in a dictionary.

5 Complete the sentences with the words in red from the text.

- 1 I want a new flat \_\_\_\_\_ we have two children now and we need another room.
- 2 7% of people don't have jobs at the moment and the number is \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 We have our own \_\_\_\_\_. It's [www.eltoutcomes.com](http://www.eltoutcomes.com).
- 4 I have a lot of clothes, but I don't have \_\_\_\_\_ for them. I only have one cupboard in my bedroom.
- 5 There are 29 \_\_\_\_\_ people in Saudi Arabia and almost \_\_\_\_\_ the people are 25 years old or under.

6 Work in pairs. Don't look at the text. What can you remember about these numbers?

39 million	13%	25%
45%	13 million	36%

7 Read again and check.

8 What things in the text do you think are similar or different in your country?

 139

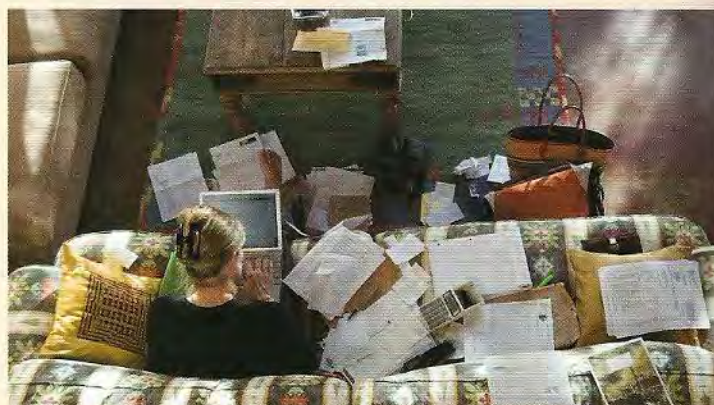
## HOMEWORKERS

Work is changing. Lots of people travel to an office or factory every day, but more people now work at home – and the number of homeworkers is **growing** fast. There are maybe 39 **million** in India and around 4.5 million in the UK. In Argentina, <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ of people work at home one day a week or more.

There are two kinds of homeworkers. Some people make things. Most homeworkers in India and Cambodia <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. Other people work for a company, but sometimes work at home and use the internet or phone. In Europe, there is a law that anyone can work at home for **half** a day a week. And homeworking is <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ for companies. Stanford University studied a Chinese company called Ctrip. The homeworkers at Ctrip did 13% more work!

Other people, called freelancers, do work for lots of different clients and companies. These people are often <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, **website** designers, or project managers. There are around 13 million freelancers in Mexico.

Most people like working at home **because** they don't need to <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ to work, and it's good for family life, and because they can work when and how they like. 25% of UK home workers like <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ when they work.



Some people think working at home is <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ because you don't see anyone all day. Also, sometimes people don't have **space** in their home – they need to work in a café. In the UK, only 26% of home workers have an office. 36% do their work in <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_, 13% work in the kitchen, <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ work in bed – and a few work in <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_!



VOCABULARY Verbs and people

9 Look at how we often make the word for a person or job. Complete the table.

Verb	Person / Job
clean	cleaner
dance	dancer
design	designer
drive	driver
manage	
play	
teach	
work	
write	

10 Complete 1–6 with the person and the correct form of the verb from Exercise 9.

- 1 My father is a teacher at a university. He teaches Business and Law.
- 2 My sister \_\_\_\_\_ basketball in a professional team. She is a very good \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 My mum is a \_\_\_\_\_. She \_\_\_\_\_ for different magazines.
- 4 My brother \_\_\_\_\_ very fast. I don't like it. He is a bad \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 My friend, Ashok, is \_\_\_\_\_ a website for me at the moment. He's a professional web \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 My brother is a \_\_\_\_\_ in a car company. He's \_\_\_\_\_ a big project at the moment.

11 Work in pairs. Choose six words from the box. Tell your partner about someone you know who is a good/bad driver, etc. Try to say why they are good or bad.

cleaner	driver	reader	teacher
dancer	[football] player	runner	worker
designer	manager	singer	writer

READING AND SPEAKING

12 Work in pairs. Student A: read the text on this page. Student B: read the text in File 2 on page 144. Answer these questions about the person in your text.

- 1 What's his/her name?
- 2 Where does he/she live?
- 3 What does he/she do?
- 4 Where does he/she work?
- 5 Does he/she like it?
- 6 Does he/she have an office?
- 7 How's his/her work at the moment?

13 Work in pairs. Tell each other about your text. Use your answers to Exercise 12.

14 Work in groups. Discuss the questions.

- Do you know anyone who works at home? What do they do? Do they like it?
- Would you like to work at home? Why? / Why not?

WRITING

15 Use the questions in Exercise 12 to write a short text about someone you know. Write a sentence for each question.

PRONUNCIATION AND REVIEW

16 ▶ 140 Listen to the sentences. They are fast. Complete the sentences with two words.

- 1 I'm working \_\_\_\_\_ this week.
- 2 She's travelling \_\_\_\_\_ today.
- 3 He's in the kitchen \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 She's talking \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 I can't find \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 When did you last \_\_\_\_\_?
- 7 They make a lot \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8 He's a very \_\_\_\_\_.

17 Work in pairs. Say the sentences but change the two words.

18 Work in pairs. In one minute say:

- rooms
- furniture
- jobs

G For more revision and pronunciation, see Exercises 1 and 2 on page 130.

Agata

I'm from Krakow in Poland, but ten years ago I moved to Berlin in Germany. I draw pictures for children's books. I normally work in the kitchen at home, but my husband sometimes works there, too. He's a designer. Our flat is very small. When he works at home, I go to a café and work there. It's nice.

I really like my job. I don't make a lot of money, but I have a lot of free time – and I love children.

Every Friday, I go to my son's school and tell stories to the children. It helps my work.

At the moment, I'm writing my own book and drawing all the pictures. My husband and I are going to make the book and sell it. Maybe we can make some more money and move to a new flat!






# VIDEO 4

## BIKE RIDING IN UTAH

1 Work in pairs. Look at the photo. Discuss the questions:

- Do you like the photo?
- Do you think it is a good place for a holiday?
- Can you do what they're doing in the photo? Why? / Why not?

2  4 Watch the video. Which sentence is true for you?

- 1 It looks fun. I want to do this one day.
- 2 It looks fun, but I can't do this.
- 3 The place looks great, but I don't like this kind of trip.
- 4 It's not for me. I don't like the place, the activity – or the weather!

3 Work in pairs. Tell your partner what you think of the video.


4 Work in pairs. Put these sentences from the video in the correct order.

- a We fly!
- b We have a coffee.
- c We're going home.
- d But then suddenly – rain.
- e Pretty amazing place to wake up.
- f We take photos. It's beautiful.
- g And the sun comes out again.
- h The next day we wake up with the sun.
- i We push our bikes up the mountain. Three hundred metres.

5 Decide what the words in red mean. Then check in a dictionary.

6 Match the verbs (1–6) with the words and phrases (a–f) to make phrases from the video.

- |              |                          |
|--------------|--------------------------|
| 1 go         | a ready for the journey  |
| 2 get        | b fast                   |
| 3 get up     | c home                   |
| 4 talk about | d with the sun           |
| 5 ride down  | e early                  |
| 6 wake up    | f what we're going to do |

7  4 Watch the video again to check your answers.

### SPEAKING

8 Which do you prefer:

- walking, cycling or driving?
- going fast or slow?
- getting up early or late?
- the city or the countryside?
- a hot place or a cold place?
- camping or a hotel?
- talking about the past or the future?



# REVIEW 4

## GRAMMAR

### 1 Choose the correct word(s).

- I love *watch* / *watching* football.
- These jeans *is* / *are* very small.
- The ticket machine *don't work* / *isn't working* at the moment.
- I don't like the yellow one. The white one *look* / *looks* better.
- I don't like *this* / *these* shoes. I prefer the brown *one* / *ones*.
- I can't find my keys. Can you see *they* / *them* / *it* anywhere?
- I'm not talking to you. I'm talking to *he* / *him* / *his*.
- He *work* / *is working* / *working* at home today.
- Do you read* / *You are reading* / *Are you reading* anything good at the moment?
- What *he's studying* / *he studying* / *is he studying* at university?

### 2 Complete the sentences with one word in each space.

- My boss \_\_\_\_\_ working at home today.
- \_\_\_\_\_ she coming to the meeting today?
- Can I try on \_\_\_\_\_ jeans, please?
- I have a car, but I don't like \_\_\_\_\_. There's a lot of traffic.
- These shoes \_\_\_\_\_ nice. They feel very comfortable.
- He went home. He's \_\_\_\_\_ feeling well.
- She's nice. I really like \_\_\_\_\_.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ reading a great book at the moment.

### 3 Correct the mistake in each sentence.

- Do it raining outside?
- My husband don't like doing exercise.
- I love your shoes. Where did you buy they?
- What you are watching?
- She's meet a client in Athens today.
- I need some glasses. Can I try this ones, please?
- This chicken very nice.
- He's very nice. I really like he.

### 4 ▶ 141 Listen and complete the sentences.

- I don't like the red tops. I prefer \_\_\_\_\_ blue \_\_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ your father \_\_\_\_\_ in Peru?
- I \_\_\_\_\_ a great series at \_\_\_\_\_.
- My friends \_\_\_\_\_ to the gym, but I \_\_\_\_\_.
- When \_\_\_\_\_ you last \_\_\_\_\_? Maybe you \_\_\_\_\_ at home.

### 5 ▶ 141 Work in pairs. Compare your answers. Listen again to check.

## VOCABULARY

### 6 Match the verbs in the box with the correct groups of words (1–8).

go	make	study	travel
leave	meet	take	wear

- \_\_\_\_\_ a T-shirt / glasses
- \_\_\_\_\_ a lot for work / a long way
- \_\_\_\_\_ a friend for dinner / a client
- \_\_\_\_\_ my bag on the bed / the dishes in the sink
- \_\_\_\_\_ an exam / a friend to the airport
- \_\_\_\_\_ dancing / running
- \_\_\_\_\_ for an exam / French at university
- \_\_\_\_\_ a cake / a lot of money

### 7 Put the words into three groups: in the house, buying clothes or free-time activities.

carpet	extra large	jumper	shelf
concert	fridge	kitchen	story
cupboard	half price	programme	writer
design	jeans	series	

### 8 Complete the missing words. You have the first two letters.

- I lo\_\_\_\_\_ my bag last night. Maybe I left it on the bus.
- You can sleep on the so\_\_\_\_\_ in the living room tonight.
- My brother is a website de\_\_\_\_\_. He makes a lot of money.
- I like reading about po\_\_\_\_\_. I'm reading a book about the government at the moment.
- My favourite football te\_\_\_\_\_ is Juventus.
- My favourite basketball pl\_\_\_\_\_ is LeBron James from the Los Angeles Lakers.
- I'm going to take an exam next week. I need to study ha\_\_\_\_\_.
- Look in the fr\_\_\_\_\_. The milk is in there.
- It doesn't feel very comfortable. Can I try the ex\_\_\_\_\_ large one?
- Can I tr\_\_\_\_\_ on this jacket?

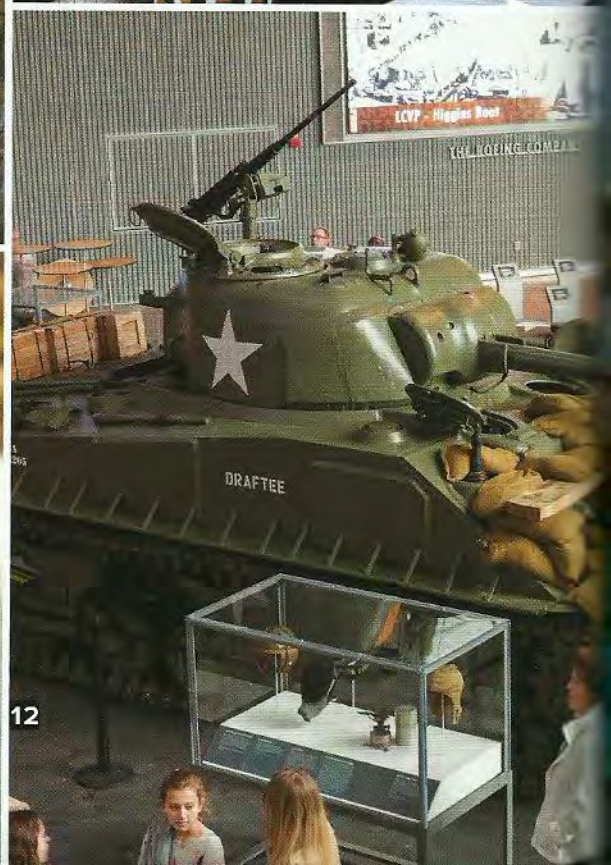
### 9 Complete the text with these words.

concerts	draw	music	read
cook	free	programmes	sing

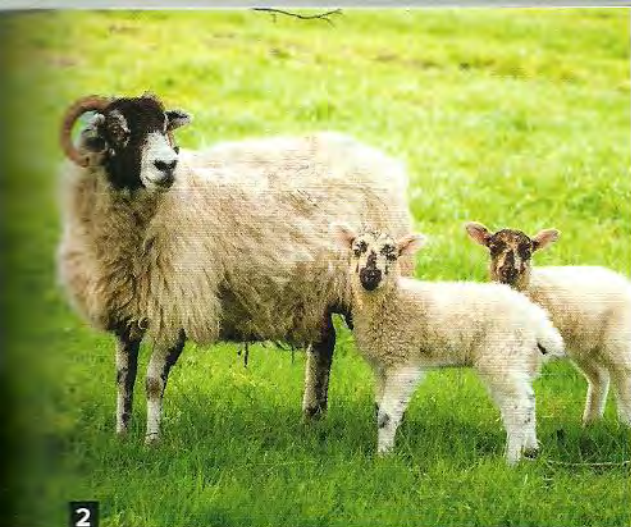
In my <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ time, I listen to a lot of <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_, I go to a lot of <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ and I <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ in a band. We're called Chill. I like watching TV too. I love <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ about travel and different countries. I <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ a lot – magazines, short stories and books. I <sup>7</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ pictures of my friends and places I visit. Oh, and I <sup>8</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ a lot. I make very good cakes!



# 9 HEALTHY AND HAPPY







## IN THIS UNIT YOU LEARN HOW TO:

- talk about health and problems
- ask people if they are better
- talk about what's important in a country or society
- talk about small and large quantities
- talk about how you know people
- ask about places people have been to



## WORDS FOR UNIT 9

### 1 Look at the words and photos.

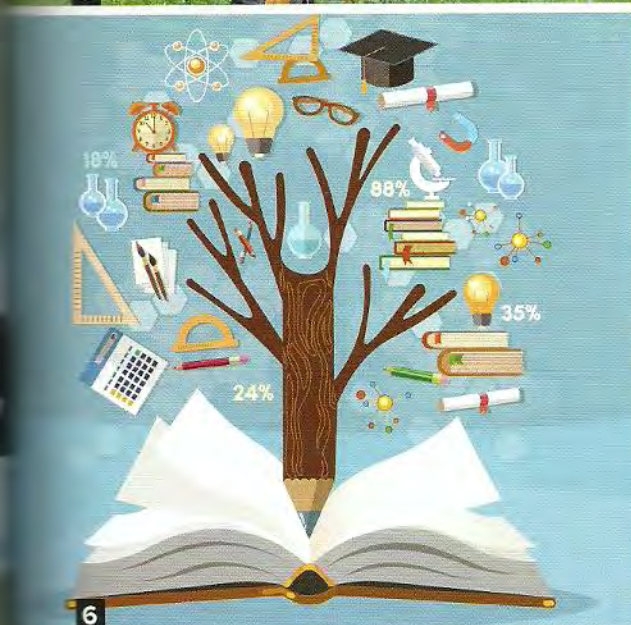
- |   |                              |
|---|------------------------------|
| 1 a <b>road</b> in the <b>countryside</b> | 8 the <b>World Cup</b>       |
| 2 a <b>sheep</b> with two <b>lambs</b>    | 9 a lot of <b>snow</b>       |
| 3 in the <b>army</b>                      | 10 it's not <b>safe</b>      |
| 4 it <b>hurts</b>                         | 11 get some <b>fresh air</b> |
| 5 <b>study</b> together                   | 12 a <b>war</b> museum       |
| 6 <b>education</b>                        | 13 have an <b>operation</b>  |
| 7 it <b>broke</b> its <b>leg</b>          | 14 at a <b>conference</b>    |

### 2 142 Listen and repeat the words.

### 3 Work in pairs. Don't look at the words.

Student A: say the number.

Student B: say the words.





# I HURT MY BACK

## SPEAKING

1 143 Listen to the conversation.



A: What happened to your arm?

B: I broke it on holiday!

A: Oh no! When was that?

B: Three weeks ago.

2 Work in pairs. Practise the conversation.

## GRAMMAR

### Time phrases for the past

When was that?

A few days ago.	Last night.	On Monday.	Today.
A few weeks ago.	Last week.	On Tuesday.	Yesterday.
A few months ago.	Last Friday.	On Sunday.	This morning.
Ten minutes ago.	Last month.		This afternoon.
Two weeks ago.	Last year.		
Ten years ago.			

I hurt my back **a few weeks ago**.

I went on holiday to Vietnam **last year**.

ago = before now      a few = 3, 4 or more

3 144 Listen to the time phrases. They are fast then slow.

last night      a few days ago  
last week      a few weeks ago

4 Work in pairs. Practise the time phrases.

5 Complete the sentences with a time phrase to make them true for you. Then tell a partner.

I broke my mobile phone \_\_\_\_\_.

I went on holiday \_\_\_\_\_.

I didn't go to my English class \_\_\_\_\_.

For more practice, see Exercises 1 and 2 on page 131.

## VOCABULARY

### Bad health and accidents

6 Match the pictures (a-h) with the sentences (1-8).



- 1 I cut my hand.
- 2 I broke my leg.
- 3 I had a very bad cold.
- 4 I had a headache.
- 5 I felt sick.
- 6 I hit my head.
- 7 I hurt my back.
- 8 I had something in my eye.

7 145 Listen and repeat sentences 1-8 from Exercise 6.



8 Use the words from Exercise 6 to make two lists:

- the present forms of the verbs. Add one more verb about bad health or accidents.
- the names of five parts of the body. Add one more.

9 Work in pairs. Close your books. Test each other.

- Student A: point to a part of the body.  
Student B: say the word.
- Student B: say a verb in the present tense.  
Student A say the verb in the past.

## SPEAKING

10 Practise the conversation in Exercise 1. Replace the words in **red**.

### Talking about parts of the body

my eye his head your leg

What's wrong with **your leg**?

It hurt my **eyes**.

He cut his **head**.

11 Work in groups. Tell people problems or accidents you had. Say when you had the problem.

## LISTENING

12 ▶ 146 Listen to four conversations. Tick (✓) the problems in Exercise 6 you hear.

13 ▶ 146 Listen again. When did each problem happen?

## DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS

### Are you feeling better?

Are you feeling better? / Is it OK now?

✓✓ (Yes.) Much better, thanks.

✓ A bit better.

✗ Not really.

14 Work in pairs. Take turns to say sentences 1–4. Your partner asks *Are you feeling better?* Answer with the word in brackets.

- I had a really bad headache. (bit)
- I had a really bad cold. (much)
- I was really tired. (much)
- I really hurt my back. (not)

## CONVERSATION PRACTICE

15 Take turns to have conversations like this.

Student A

Student B

Where were you [time]?

[Answer]

Oh no! ... OK? / better?

OR

What happened to [part of body]?

[Answer]

When was that?

[Answer]

... OK? / better?

[Answer]



147 For more practice, listen to two more examples.

Siriraj Hospital opened 120 years ago. It is now Thailand's most important hospital.



# IT'S A BEAUTIFUL ENVIRONMENT

## REVIEW AND SPEAKING

### 1 Work in pairs. Choose one.

- Say something you did: last week, two months ago and a few years ago. Your partner asks one question about it.
- Tell a partner about something you broke, cut or hurt. Your partner asks one question about it.

## VOCABULARY Country and society

### 2 Match the sentences (1–5) with the groups of words (a–e).

- Education here is great.
- The **health system** here is very bad.
- The **environment** is very good.
- The **weather** here is OK.
- Crime is very bad.

- rain sun snow
- teachers schools university
- safe police army
- the air the water the countryside
- hospitals doctors an operation

### 3 148 Listen and repeat these words.

countryside	environment	hospital	university
education	health system	operation	weather

### 4 Tick (✓) the new words from Exercise 2 you didn't know before.

### 5 Why is somewhere good to live? Put the words in **red** from Exercise 2 in order of how important you think they are.

- |                  |                   |
|------------------|-------------------|
| 1 most important | 4 less important  |
| 2 very important | 5 least important |
| 3 important      |                   |

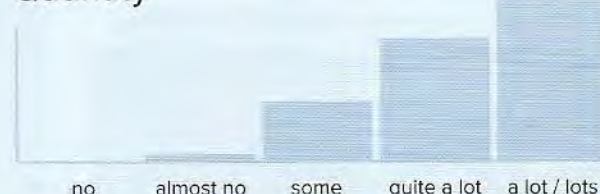
### 6 Compare in groups. Do you have the same order? What other things are important?

### 7 Choose one or two words from a–e in Exercise 2 to say something about the sentences 1–5 in Exercise 2.

- Education here is great. The **teachers** are very good. A lot of people go to **university**.

## GRAMMAR

### Quantity



There's	<b>a lot of / lots of / quite a lot of</b>	crime.
We have	<b>some</b>	rain.
There are	<b>almost no</b>	clean water.
We have	<b>no</b>	bad doctors.
		police.
		good schools.

### 8 Complete the sentences with *is*, *are* or *have*.

- There \_\_\_\_\_ problems in our hospitals.
- There \_\_\_\_\_ crime in the countryside.
- We \_\_\_\_\_ snow where I live.
- There \_\_\_\_\_ police on the streets here.
- There \_\_\_\_\_ beautiful countryside near here.
- There \_\_\_\_\_ women in the government.
- We \_\_\_\_\_ holidays in our country.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ free time at the moment.

### 9 Add a quantity word or phrase to the sentences in Exercise 8. Make them true for you or your country.

There are **quite a lot of** problems in our hospitals.  
There's **almost no** crime in the countryside.

**G** For more practice, see Exercises 1–3 on page 131.

## READING

### 10 Do you think your country is a good place to live? Why? / Why not?

### 11 Read about Iceland. Match each title with the right paragraph (1–7).

Sport	Education	A safe country	Food
The health system	The weather	A great environment	



# ICELAND: POSSIBLY THE BEST COUNTRY IN THE WORLD

Iceland is a small island in the north of Europe. People are very happy and it's the best country – or *almost* the best – for lots of things.

## 1 (First in the world)

There is almost no crime. The police don't need **guns**. Iceland has no army and it never has wars.

## 2 (Second in the world)

Iceland has beautiful countryside. There are a lot of mountains, volcanoes and lakes. It has very clean water and fresh air. 97% of people say the water is very good.

## 3 (Number 15 in the world)

It doesn't cost anything to go to the doctor or a hospital. It's easy to see a doctor, but sometimes you need to wait for an operation. On **average**, people live until they are 83.

## 4 (Number 31 in the world)

Some people say that students are **worse** now. They do worse in exams, but 99% of people in Iceland can read. Children stay

in the same school between 6 and 16 years old and most people **continue** studying until they are 20 or 21. 60% of people go to university.

## 5 (Number 22 in the world)

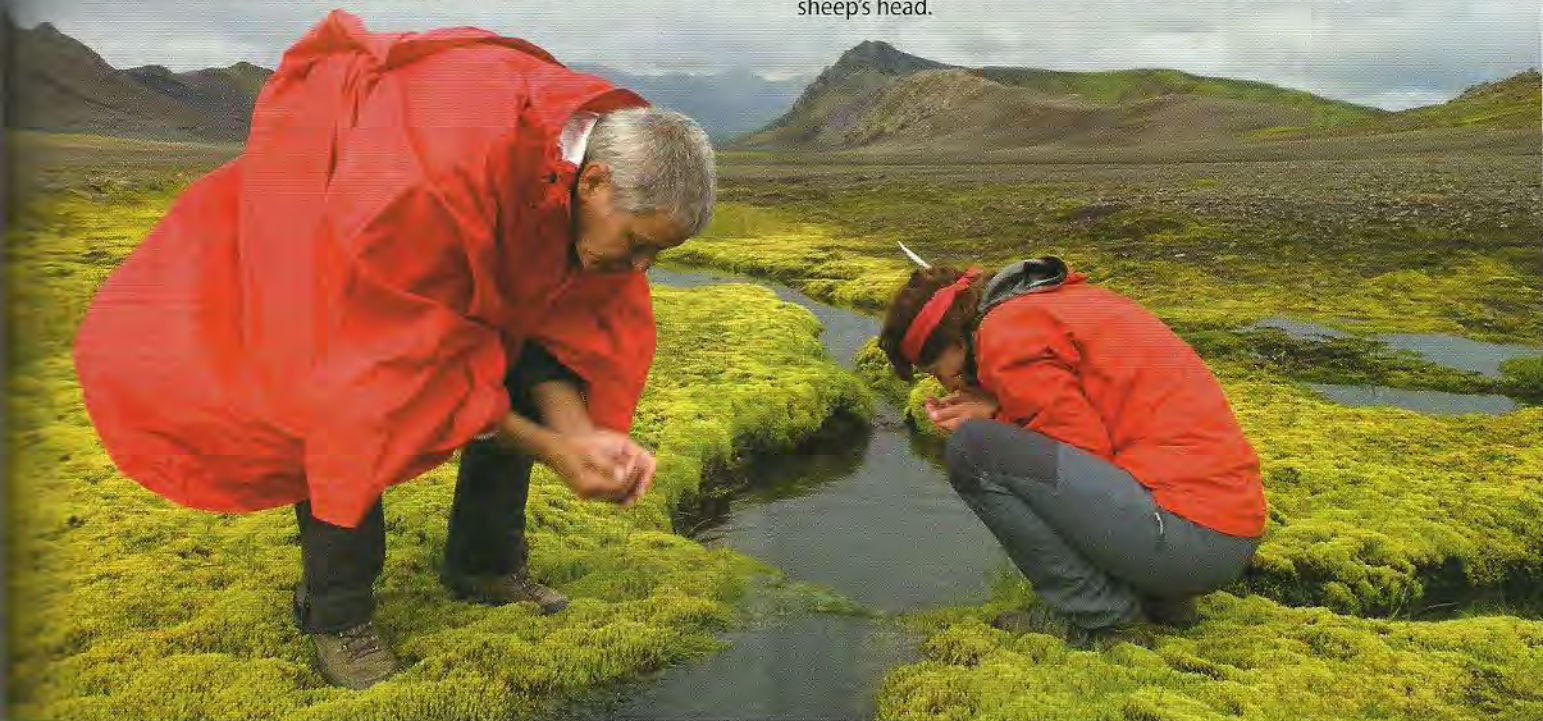
People in Iceland love football. In 2010 their football team was number 110 in the world but it's much better now. In 2018, the team was in the World Cup in Russia.

## 6

It isn't very hot in Iceland. In December, it's usually about -3 degrees and you only see the sun for about 17 minutes a day. In **summer**, it is usually about 15 degrees and the day is 22 hours long! On average, it rains or snows three or four times a week.

## 7

Food is very fresh. Icelanders eat a lot of fish and vegetables. They have the best lamb in the world and a favourite dish is sheep's head.



- 12 Say what the numbers from the text mean. Read again and check.

97% 22 83 17 minutes 60% three or four

- 13 Look at the words in **red** from the text. Guess what they mean. Check in a dictionary.

### Better and worse

The football team is much **better** now. = 'more-good'  
Students are **worse**. = 'more-bad'

- 14 Talk about Iceland and where you live. Say what you think is better or worse in your country.

*I think our football team is better.*

- 15 Look at the question below. Write four similar questions. Use a dictionary if you need to.

What do you think of **education** (in Russia / here)?

- 16 Work in groups. Ask and answer your questions.

A: What do you think of education here?

B: It's better now. There are lots of good schools.

## WRITING

- 17 Write some sentences about your country or area. Use ideas from the Reading text. Change them to make them true for your country.





# LIVING ABROAD

## SPEAKING

- 1** Work in pairs. Discuss the questions.
- Do you know anyone who lives abroad (in another country)?
  - Do you think it's easy or difficult to live in another country? Why?

## LISTENING

- 2** **150** Listen to the first part of a conversation between the people in the picture. Choose the correct word or phrase in 1–5.



- 1 An is Lena's boss / friend.
- 2 An and Lena go to the same school / work together.
- 3 Kasper and Lena's mothers / brothers are friends.
- 4 Kasper is Polish / British.
- 5 An is from Vietnam / Poland.

## VOCABULARY Meeting and moving

- 3** Look at sentences a–j. Check you understand all the words. Find six answers to question 1 and four answers to question 2.

1 How do you know each other? a, \_\_\_\_\_

2 Why are you here? \_\_\_\_\_

- a We met when we were on holiday in Greece.
- b For work. My company moved its office here.
- c We worked together. He was my boss in my last job.
- d We met at a conference. We both work in Health.
- e To study. I'm doing a Master's here.
- f I'm here on business. I'm meeting a client.
- g We were in the army together.
- h We were at university together. We did the same course.
- i She was a friend of a friend.
- j For love! My husband is from Colombia – and the weather here is better!

- 4** Cover the sentences. Complete the phrases with one word.

We met ...

I'm here ...

- |                     |                 |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| _____ a conference. | _____ love.     |
| _____ university.   | _____ work.     |
| _____ holiday.      | _____ business. |
| _____ the army.     | _____ study.    |

- 5** Tell your partner about two people you know who moved to a new place. Say why they moved.

*My friend Dan moved for work.*

- 6** Think of four different ways you met people you know. Write a list of the four people.



- 7 Work in pairs. Give the list of names to your partner. Ask and answer questions.

A: How do you know Alfie?

B: We went to school together. He's my best friend.  
How do you know Donna?

## LISTENING

- 8 Work in pairs. Read the second part of the conversation between Kasper, An and Lena. Try to complete it with the phrases in the box.

came to	lot of	quite a	years ago
better	my hand	staying with	
long time	's not working	think of	

K: So, An. Have you been here before?

A: Yes. A few <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.

K: OK. To study English?

A: No. I <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ see my sister.

K: Does she live here?

A: Yes. I'm <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ her now.

K: Oh, OK. What does she do?

A: She <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ at the moment. She had a baby last year.

K: Oh, great. What did she <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ the British health service?

A: I'm not sure. Good, I think. Her baby's very well.

K: That's good. There are a <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ problems with the health system at the moment.

A: Really?

K: Yes. It's difficult. You sometimes wait a <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ to see a doctor.

A: Oh.

L: Kasper, tell her what happened to you.

K: I broke <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ last month and I waited in the hospital for four hours!

A: Oh four hours. It's a lot. Are hospitals <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ in Poland?

L: I don't know.

K: I've never been to a hospital there!

A: How often do you go to Poland?

K: <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ lot. My mum lives there now.

A: OK.

K: She went back two years ago. Have you been to Poland?

A: No. Maybe next year with Lena!

- 9 ▶ 151 Listen and check.

- 10 ▶ 151 Listen to and read the second part of the conversation again. Tick (✓) the sentences that are right. Change the sentences that are wrong.

An has a brother. ✗ An has a sister.

An's sister lives in Britain. ✓

1 An had a baby last year.

2 An thinks the British health system is bad.

3 Kasper hurt his hand a few weeks ago.

4 Kasper's mum lived in Britain before, but now lives in Poland.

## DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS

### Have you been ...?

A: Have you been here before?

B: Yes. Two years ago.

A: Have you been to Poland?

B: No, never.

- 11 Complete the question with the names of four countries and four cities.

1 Have you been to Brazil? Have you been to Berlin?

- 12 Work in pairs. Ask your questions.

## SPEAKING

- 13 ▶ 152 Listen to the third part of the conversation between An and Kasper. Write Kasper's answers.

Question	Kasper	Your partner
Why did you go?		
When was that?		
Where did you go?	Hanoi	
What did you think of it?		
How long were you there?		

- 14 Work in pairs. Have similar conversations.

- Start with one of your *Have you been to...?* questions from Exercise 11.
- Ask and answer the questions in Exercise 13. Complete the table with your partner's answers.

## PRONUNCIATION AND REVIEW

- 15 ▶ 153 Listen to the sounds and the four words. Which word has a different sound?

1 /æ/	hand	arm	accident	back
2 /ɜ:/	hurt	worse	first	course
3 /ɒ/	move	boss	job	problem
4 /əʊ/	road	broke	women	snow
5 /e/	leg	health	head	great
6 /ɪ/	air	hit	system	business
7 /aɪ/	eye	quite	friend	crime
8 /eɪ/	safe	war	wait	education

- 16 Practise saying the three words with the same sound from Exercise 15.

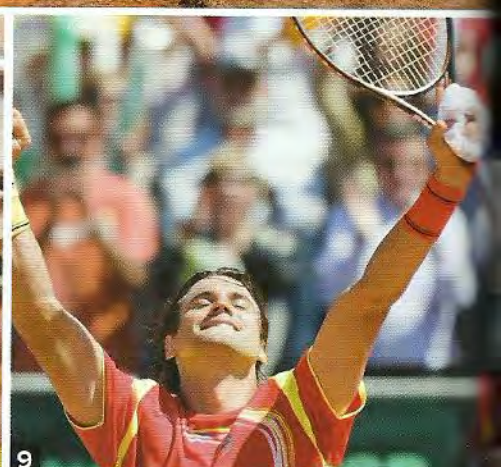
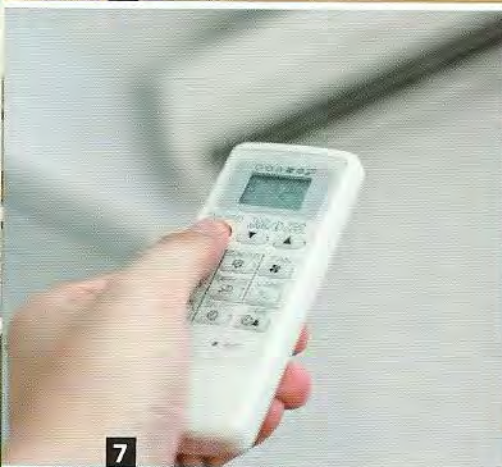
- 17 Choose one word from each group of words. Use the word to say a sentence about you or your country.



For more revision and pronunciation, see Exercises 1–5 on page 131.



# 10 NEWS







## IN THIS UNIT YOU LEARN HOW TO:

- talk about the weather
- tell people about future plans and predictions
- say what's happening near you
- make plans with other people
- talk about some simple news stories
- ask questions about the news

## WORDS FOR UNIT 10

1 Look at the words and photos.

- |                                       |                                 |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1 an election                         | 8 have <b>fun</b> (at the fair) |
| 2 stay <b>warm</b> by the fire        | 9 he <b>won</b> the match       |
| 3 <b>turn off</b> the heating         | 10 <b>winter</b> in the city    |
| 4 a <b>heart</b>                      | 11 <b>someone died</b>          |
| 5 the <b>countryside's</b> very dry   | 12 <b>build</b> a stadium       |
| 6 it's very <b>windy</b>              | 13 an <b>accident</b>           |
| 7 <b>turn on</b> the air conditioning | 14 <b>What's</b> the score?     |

2 154 Listen and repeat the words.

3 Work in pairs. Don't look at the words.

Student A: say the number.

Student B: say the words.



3

6

10

13

14





# IT'S GOING TO STAY LIKE THIS

## SPEAKING

### 1 ▶ 155 Work in pairs. Listen to a short conversation.

A: Is it raining now?

B: Yes. It's horrible!

A: Is it going to stay like this?

B: I think so. They say it's going to rain for the next three days.

A: Oh no!

B: What's the problem? Do you have plans?

A: No, but my friends are going camping! They're going to the mountains.

B: Oh! They're going to get very wet!

A: I know!

(stay/be/look) **like** = similar to

Is it going to stay **like** this?

It's **like** my country.

I look **like** my dad.

### 2 Work in pairs. Practise the conversation in Exercise 1.

## VOCABULARY Summer and winter

We can talk about the weather with *it + be + adjective* or *it + verb*.

It's **horrible**.

Is it **raining** now?

It's **cold**.

It **snows** a lot here.

### 3 Choose the correct word(s).

1 We don't have air conditioning in our house. It's not usually very hot here in the *summer / winter*.

2 It's really cold in the winter. It's sometimes 38 degrees (38 °C) / *minus 30 (-30 °C)*.

3 It's really hot here at the moment. It was 38 degrees / *minus 30* yesterday. I don't like it.

4 It's warm and sunny today, but it's going to *change / stay like this* tomorrow. It's going to rain.

5 We don't have much rain here. The countryside is very *wet / dry*.

6 It's really cold. I'm going to turn on the *heating / air-con*.

7 The house doesn't have heating. There's only *a fire / a sink* in the living room.

8 Be careful on your bike. It's very *windy / sunny* today.

### 4 Make two lists of words for *Summer* and *Winter*. Choose any words from Exercise 3.

### 5 Work in pairs. Compare your lists. Do you have the same? Can you add two words to each list?

### 6 Complete the sentences with these words.

is rains raining is was rained

1 It \_\_\_\_\_ all day yesterday.

2 It \_\_\_\_\_ very hot today.

3 Is it \_\_\_\_\_ now? Do I need to take a coat?

4 It \_\_\_\_\_ so cold last week.

5 It \_\_\_\_\_ not usually like this. It normally \_\_\_\_\_ a lot in April.



For more months of the year, see page 139.



- 7 Work in pairs. Ask questions about: a) where you are now and b) another place you know.
- How's the weather now? Is it usually like this?
  - How was the weather yesterday?
  - How is the weather in January? And in July?
  - What time of year and weather do you like best?

## GRAMMAR

### Future: *am/are/is going*

Plan: **My friends are going** camping. **They're going** to the mountains.

Prediction: **It's going** to rain. **They're going** to get wet.

I	'm	swimming	later.
	am		
You	're	home	tomorrow.
We	're	home	tomorrow.
They	are	going to Berlin	next week.
	are	going	at the weekend.
It	's	to stay like this	on Friday.
He	's	to win	
She	is	to be here	

- 8 Complete the conversations with the correct form of the verb *be*.

- A: It's nice and warm today.  
B: I know. Do you have any plans for this evening?  
A: I \_\_\_\_\_ going to my friends' house. They \_\_\_\_\_ going to have a barbecue.
- A: What are you doing at the weekend?  
B: Ricardo \_\_\_\_\_ going to be in town, so we \_\_\_\_\_ going to have dinner together.  
A: That's nice.
- A: It \_\_\_\_\_ going to snow next week.  
B: Oh good. My son \_\_\_\_\_ going skiing next week. He \_\_\_\_\_ going with the school.  
A: Really? Where \_\_\_\_\_ they going?
- A: We \_\_\_\_\_ going to play football later. Do you want to play?  
B: I don't think so. It's so hot.  
A: I think it \_\_\_\_\_ going to be OK this evening. Better than now.



- 9 Write sentences about these things.

- the weather tomorrow, next weekend and next week.
- plans for tomorrow, next week and the summer.
- a plan that a person in your family has.

- 10 Work in pairs. A: say one of your sentences. B: comment or ask a question. Take turns.

- A: *It's going to be sunny tomorrow.*      A: *My son's going to Peru in the summer.*  
B: *I know. It's going to be 20 degrees.*      B: *Why's he going there?*  
A: *Business.*

## LISTENING

- 11  156 Listen to four conversations. In each conversation, is the weather going to change?
- 12  156 Listen again and complete the table.

	Weather now	Weather tomorrow	Plans
1	hot	_____	go to the island stay inside
2	cold	_____	_____ special
3	_____	_____ warm	have a barbecue
4	_____	cold _____ rain	go shopping _____ do some jobs

- 13 Work in groups. Talk about places you have been to that were very wet, cold, windy or hot.

## DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS

### *I think so / I don't think so*

A: *Is it going to rain?*      A: *Is it going to snow?*

B: *I think so.*      B: *I don't think so.*

NOT: ~~*I think yes*~~ or ~~*I think no*~~

- 14 Look at the questions. Make questions to ask people in your class. Change the words in **red**.
- Is it going to be nice tomorrow?
  - Is it going to rain later?
  - Are you going to the cinema this evening?
  - Is Petra married?
  - Does Rosario have any brothers or sisters?
  - Does Kenji live near here?
- 15 Work in pairs. Ask your questions from Exercise 14. Use *I think so* or *I don't think so*.

## CONVERSATION PRACTICE

- 16 Work in pairs. Have conversations like this.

Student A	Student B
It's so [wet]!	I know. Is it going to stay like this?
[Answer]	Oh, good. / Oh no!
Why? Do you have any plans?	[Answer.]
[Continue]	

- 17 Change partner. Have another conversation, but change how the weather is now.

 157 For more practice, listen to another example.




# A FESTIVAL

## REVIEW AND SPEAKING

- 1 Talk about the weather where you live. Say how the weather:
  - was last week.
  - is going to be next week.
  - is normally at this time of year.
- 2 Talk about your plans for the summer or winter holidays.

## VOCABULARY Entertainment

- 3 Describe the six photos (a–f) with some of the **red** words in 1–10.
  - 1 There's a good **play** at the Grand Theatre at the moment.
  - 2 There's a jazz **band** playing in the main square.
  - 3 There's a **circus** next to the football stadium.
  - 4 There's a big **festival** near here.
  - 5 There's a fair in the park.
  - 6 There's a good **exhibition** at the festival. They're showing some interesting **photos**.
  - 7 There's a **classical** **concert**. It's free.
  - 8 There's a **comedy** **show** in a club in town.
  - 9 There's a big **match** tonight. Inter are playing Juve.
  - 10 They're showing that new **film** about Picasso at the cinema.

- 4  158 Listen and repeat these words.

circus	comedy	exhibition
classical	concert	festival

- 5 Work in groups. Discuss the questions.
  - Which activities from Exercise 3 are fun for you? Which are **boring**?
  - What fun things are there where you live?

## READING

- 6 Work in pairs. Are there any music festivals in your country? Think of one. How many of these questions can you answer?
  - 1 Where is it?
  - 2 When is the festival?
  - 3 How long is the festival?
  - 4 What kind of music do they play?
  - 5 Can you only see music?
  - 6 How much does the festival cost?
- 7 Read the article about the Pohoda festival. Answer the questions from Exercise 6 about the text.







▶ 159

## A YEAR OF FUN IN ONE WEEKEND!

The Pohoda festival happens in the second weekend of July in Trenčín, Slovakia. Trenčín is in beautiful countryside. It's next to the river Váh and near the Carpathian mountains. The festival started in 1997. In the first year, it was in Trenčín's football stadium. It **lasted** one day and there were eight bands.

Now, the festival is at an old army airport near the city. It lasts two days and there are over 160 concerts with all kinds of music from all over the world. But it's not only music that you can see: there are plays; there are art exhibitions; they show films; you can listen to writers reading from their books; you can go to **discussions** about politics. Children can learn circus **skills** or they can do dancing or play games. There are also yoga and exercise classes.

Almost 30,000 people visit the festival each day. Most people camp. There is a special area for families. The weather is normally hot and sunny at the festival. If it rains, everyone can go inside and stay dry. And there are lots of showers, toilets and wash rooms, so people can stay clean. It costs around \$100 per ticket, but it's free for children (under 12), when they are with an **adult**.

Who is going to be at the festival this year? Go to the Pohoda website to see the list of bands and other artists!

over = more than      under = less than

### 8 Read again. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)?

- 1 The festival started in the stadium, but moved.
- 2 Only bands from Slovakia play at the festival.
- 3 It's quite a small festival.
- 4 It rains a lot at the festival.
- 5 The festival is good for families.

### 9 Look at the words in red. Guess what they mean. Check in a dictionary.

### 10 Work in pairs. Discuss the questions.

- What things at the Pohoda festival do you like doing and seeing?
- Would you like to go to the Pohoda Festival? Why? / Why not?

## WRITING

- 11 Write about a festival in your country. Answer the questions from Exercise 6. Say if you think the festival is good or not.

## DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS

- 12 ▶ 160 Listen to a conversation between two people at the festival. Tick (✓) the things they talk about.

a concert      an exhibition      a play  
a class      a discussion      a film

### Deciding what to do

Suggesting an idea

A: **How about** a play?

✓ B: OK. / Yeah, great.

X B: **I don't really like** plays.

**I'd prefer** a film.

Deciding when and where to meet

**I'll meet you after that.**

- 13 Work in pairs. Complete the conversation with the phrases from the box.

A: What do you want to see today?

B: <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ Jessie Ware? She's playing tonight.

A: <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. I like her music.

B: What else?

A: How about a play? There's one in the theatre tent this afternoon.

B: I don't really like plays. I'd prefer a film. They're showing *Jaws*.

A: <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. What do you want to do now?

B: <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ a yoga class? There's one in fifteen minutes.

A: No. <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ the politics discussion.

B: Really? <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ politics.

A: Well, you go to the yoga and I'll meet you after that. We can get something to eat.

B: OK. Where?

A: <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ here at twelve.

B: OK.

- 14 ▶ 160 Listen again and check.

- 15 Work in pairs. Practise the conversation.

## SPEAKING

- 16 Work in pairs. Make a list of three fun things that are happening this weekend where you live. Say when and where they are happening. Use the ideas from Exercise 3.

- 17 Change partners. With your new partner decide what you want to do together.





# DID YOU SEE THE NEWS?

## SPEAKING

### 1 Which sentences are true for you? Compare in pairs.

- I always follow the news. It's important.
- I sometimes watch the news, but not very often.
- A lot of the news isn't true.
- I like news about sport.
- I like news about famous people.
- The news is sad.
- The news makes me angry.
- The news is interesting.

## VOCABULARY National and international news

### 2 Check you understand the words in red. Choose the best question to ask.

- 1 A: Princess Sophia is going to get married.  
B: How old was she? / When?
- 2 A: President Smith **died** yesterday. He had a **heart** attack.  
B: How did he die? / How old was he?
- 3 A: Barbara Francisco **had her** baby.  
B: Is it a boy or a girl? / Who did that?
- 4 A: There was a really big **fire** in a shopping centre near here.  
B: How did it start? / How much was it?
- 5 A: There was an **election** in Germany yesterday.  
B: Who scored? / Who won?
- 6 A: There was a big **accident** on the motorway. About ten cars!  
B: Did anyone die? / What was the score?
- 7 A: They're going to build a new airport.  
B: Why? / How much did it cost?

8 A: Arsenal lost 3–0 to Zenit, St Petersburg.

B: Who won? / Who scored?

9 A: The government is going to **spend** more money on education.

B: How many people were there? / How much?

10 A: Toyota is going to **close** its factory here.

B: How much? / How many people work there?

### 3 ▶ 161 Listen and check.

### 4 Which of the news stories in Exercise 2 are about the future?

### 5 Choose five stories from Exercise 2. Write an answer to the question.

### 6 Work in pairs. Take turns to start. If you don't have an answer to the question, say *I don't know*.

A: Barbara Francisco **had her** baby.

B: Is it a boy or a girl?

A: A girl.

A: President Smith **died** yesterday. He **had a** heart attack.

B: How old was he?

A: I don't know.

### 7 What do you think of each piece of news in Exercise 2?

It's terrible. / It's good. / I'm not really interested.

## GRAMMAR Past forms review

Regular past forms end in -ed.

start — started change — changed try — tried

Irregular past forms have no rules!

have — had go — went lose — lost





## 8 Complete the table.

Regular		Irregular	
Present	Past	Present	Past
finish			was/were
decide		get	
open		win	
happen			took
	stopped	see	
play	played	meet	
talk			cut
help	helped		cost
	tried		spent
use			came

## 9 ▶ 162 Listen and repeat the regular past forms from the table in Exercise 8.

## 10 Cover the table. Complete the sentences with the past form of the verbs.

- The government \_\_\_\_\_ the election, so there's going to be a new president. (lose)
- They \_\_\_\_\_ the new airport yesterday. It \_\_\_\_\_ \$3 billion. (open / cost)
- Mustafa Wady \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday. He \_\_\_\_\_ cancer. (die / have)
- Our president \_\_\_\_\_ the Chinese president yesterday. They \_\_\_\_\_ about the environment. (meet / talk)
- It \_\_\_\_\_ a lot yesterday and there \_\_\_\_\_ lots of accidents on the roads. (snow / are)
- Vettel \_\_\_\_\_ the Brazilian Grand Prix yesterday. Hamilton \_\_\_\_\_ second. (win / come)

## 11 Write two sentences about news at the moment. Use words from Exercise 2 or use a dictionary.

**G** For more practice, see Exercises 1–4 on page 133.

## READING AND SPEAKING

### 12 Work in groups of four. Divide into two pairs.

Pair A: Read the two sentences. Write two questions to ask about each news story.

THERE WAS A BIG FIRE IN A SCHOOL.

Lesser's is going to close a factory and several shops.

Pair B: Read the two sentences. Write two questions to ask about each news story.

BAYERN MUNICH WON THE GERMAN CUP.

The government is going to spend more money on health services.

### 13 Give your questions to the other pair.

Pair A: read the stories in File 5 on page 145. Try and find answers to pair B's questions.

Pair B: read the stories in File 11 on page 147. Try and find answers to Pair A's questions.

### 14 Work in pairs of one A and one B. Have conversations like this:

Student A	Student B
Did you see the news?	No. What happened?
[Read your first sentence from Exercise 12]	[Ask your first question]
[Answer / Say I don't know]	[Ask your second question]
[Answer] / Say I don't know.	

### 15 Work in groups. Talk about the news stories you wrote about in Exercise 11.

## PRONUNCIATION AND REVIEW

### 16 ▶ 163 Listen to the sounds and the four words. Which word has a different sound?

- |        |          |          |          |        |
|--------|----------|----------|----------|--------|
| 1 /e/  | election | weather  | heart    | wet    |
| 2 /ʌ/  | fun      | use      | won      | summer |
| 3 /ai/ | little   | dry      | fire     | die    |
| 4 /ɜ:/ | turn     | learn    | circus   | score  |
| 5 /æ/  | about    | accident | adult    | angry  |
| 6 /o/  | comedy   | close    | politics | lost   |
| 7 /ɪ/  | build    | winter   | like     | skill  |

### 17 Practise saying the three words with the same sound from Exercise 16.

### 18 In two minutes write:

- weather words.
- entertainment words.
- news words.

**G** For more pronunciation, see Exercise 1 on page 133.



# VIDEO 5



## A SPECIAL SKILL

**1** Work in pairs. Look at the photo. Write ten things about the photo, including:

- things you can see
- what people are doing

**2** **5** Watch the video and answer the questions.

- Who is Stephen Wiltshire?
- What city is he in?
- What's special about what he does?

**3** Tick (✓) the things you learn in the video.

- Stephen is British.
- Some of his drawings are four metres long.
- Stephen has autism.
- He didn't learn to speak until he was nine.
- He went to a special school.
- He draws from memory.
- He has drawings of many cities around the world.
- There are exhibitions of his work.
- He's good at maths.
- He took five days to finish the drawing of Mexico.

**4** **5** Watch the video again and check.

**5** Discuss the questions.

- What do you think of Stephen's art?
- Did you know about autism before or hear any stories about it?
- Are there special schools for people like Stephen in your country? Are they good?

## SPEAKING

**6** What skills do you have? Write a list. Use the ideas in the box or use a dictionary if you need to.

I'm good at I'm quite good at I'm really good at	drawing.
	writing.
	cooking.
	making things.
	talking to people.
	listening to people.
	languages.
	sport.
	computer games.
	maths.

**7** Tell your partner the things you are good at. How many skills do you and your partner both have?



# REVIEW 5

## GRAMMAR

### 1 Choose the correct word(s).

- 1 I met her ten years *ago* / *before*.
- 2 I went to a concert *in* / *on* Friday.
- 3 We had almost *not* / *no* rain last year.
- 4 There are quite *lots of* / *a lot of* good schools in my town.
- 5 What's wrong with *the* / *your* / *you* back?
- 6 It's hot today, but *it doesn't stay* / *it's not going to stay* / *it's not staying* like this.
- 7 *We don't go* / *We're not going* / *We're not go* home this week.
- 8 *It was* / *were* / *did* very cold last week. It snowed a lot.

### 2 Complete the text with the past simple of the verbs.

I <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a really good weekend. On Friday night, I <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (meet) some friends and we <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to a concert. It <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (start) at ten and <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (finish) at four. I <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (take) a taxi home. It <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (cost) a lot of money and I <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (be) very tired on Saturday! On Sunday, I <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (play) football and my team <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (win).

### 3 Complete the sentences with one word in each space.

- 1 I saw her in the street fifteen minutes \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 She started her new job a \_\_\_\_\_ days ago.
- 3 He's not here at the moment. He felt sick \_\_\_\_\_ morning and he went home about an hour ago.
- 4 We went to Sweden on holiday \_\_\_\_\_ year. It was great.
- 5 Look at the sky. It's going \_\_\_\_\_ rain later.
- 6 I'm \_\_\_\_\_ swimming after class today. There's a pool near here.

### 4 Write full sentences. Use the words in brackets.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ tonight. (It / snow)
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ in my city. (There / lot / problems)
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ next week. (I / not / be / here)
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ in my area. (There / almost / bad schools)
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow. Sorry! (You / lose / the match)

### 5 ▶ 164 Listen and complete the sentences.

- 1 He \_\_\_\_\_ his leg a \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 I \_\_\_\_\_ to my friends' house \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 I didn't \_\_\_\_\_ to my yoga class \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 There \_\_\_\_\_ problems in our hospitals.
- 5 It \_\_\_\_\_ at the weekend.

### 6 ▶ 164 Work in pairs. Compare your answers. Listen again to check.

## VOCABULARY

### 7 Match the verbs in the box with the correct groups of words (1–8).

break	do	have	turn on
build	get	lose	work

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ in education / together
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ a new stadium / more roads
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ a Master's / a French course
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ married / very wet
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ a baby / something in my eye
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_ an election / a match
- 7 \_\_\_\_\_ the heating / the air conditioning
- 8 \_\_\_\_\_ my arm / my leg

### 8 Put the words into three groups: health and accidents, society or entertainment.

air	crime	festival
break	cut	headache
circus	education	hurt
classical music	environment	sick
comedy	exhibition	university

### 9 Complete the missing words. You have the first two letters.

- 1 It's very hot today. It's about 35 de \_\_\_\_\_ outside.
- 2 On av \_\_\_\_\_, men make more money than women.
- 3 Education was bad in the past, but I think it's much be \_\_\_\_\_ now.
- 4 Liverpool won. Mo Salah sc \_\_\_\_\_ three times.
- 5 The festival is in July. It usually la \_\_\_\_\_ four days.
- 6 It's always very cold in winter. It's mi \_\_\_\_\_ 26 now.
- 7 There's a lot of crime. It's not very sa \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8 He died last year. He had a heart at \_\_\_\_\_.
- 9 I'm not feeling well. I have a very bad co \_\_\_\_\_.

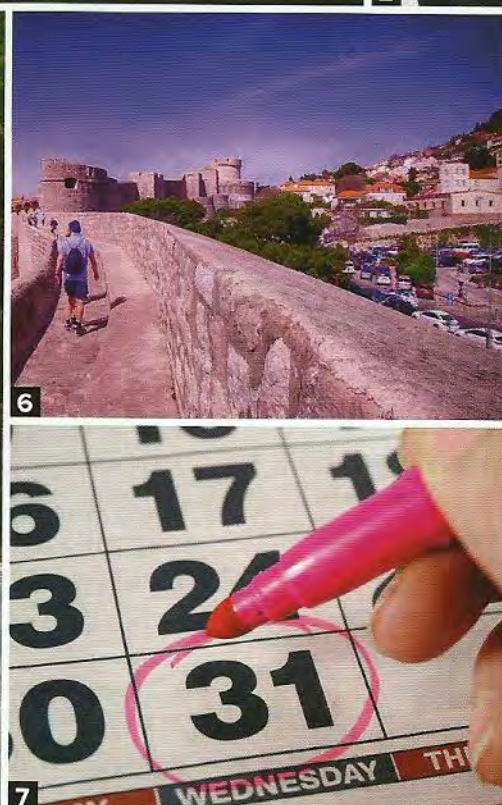
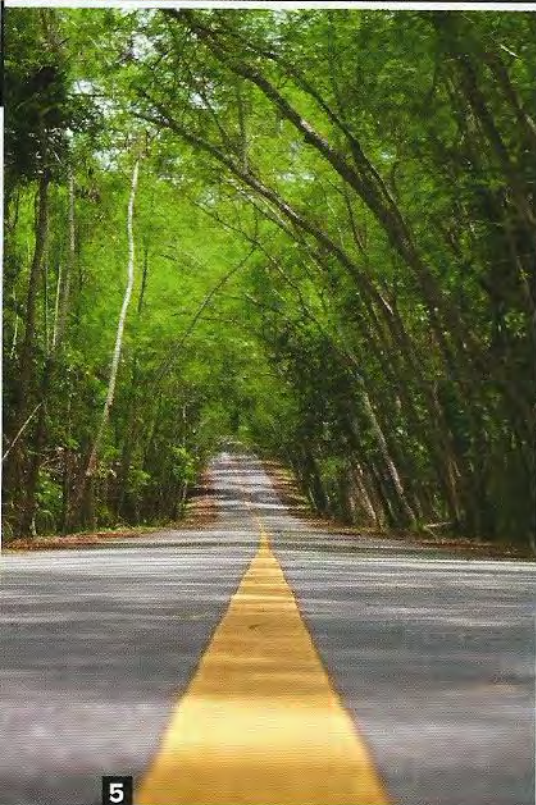
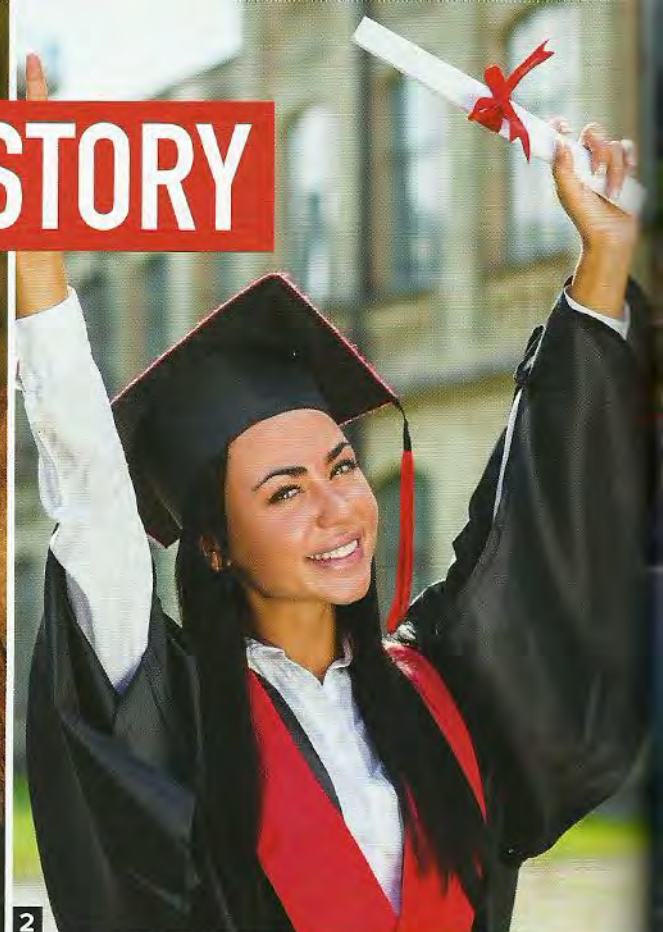
### 10 Complete the sentences with the missing prepositions.

- 1 We met \_\_\_\_\_ a conference in Malta.
- 2 It's a good exhibition. They're showing paintings \_\_\_\_\_ local artists.
- 3 They need to spend more money \_\_\_\_\_ education.
- 4 We met when we were \_\_\_\_\_ holiday in Corfu.
- 5 We met twenty years ago. We were \_\_\_\_\_ the army together.
- 6 We met ten years ago. We were \_\_\_\_\_ university together.
- 7 He's a friend \_\_\_\_\_ a friend.
- 8 I moved here \_\_\_\_\_ work. My company opened a new office here.



**11**

# LIFE AND HISTORY







## IN THIS UNIT YOU LEARN HOW TO:

- talk about celebrations and events
- invite people and reply
- talk about dates and when things happen
- talk about your life
- take part in a guided tour
- ask questions about people and places

## WORDS FOR UNIT 11

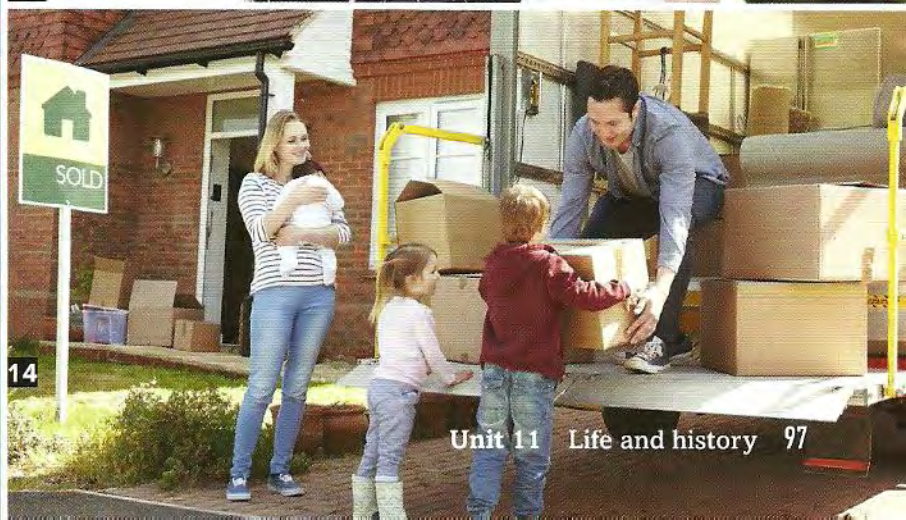
- |                                |  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| 1 fight each other             | 8 a lucky cat                                  |
| 2 get a degree                 | 9 a child with his grandmother                 |
| 3 celebrate the fourth of July | 10 grow vegetables                             |
| 4 be born                      | 11 get angry because the printer's not working |
| 5 the middle of the road       | 12 the king and queen                          |
| 6 walk along the city wall     | 13 birds on the rocks                          |
| 7 What's the date today?       | 14 move house                                  |

2 165 Listen and repeat the words.

3 Work in pairs. Don't look at the words.

Student A: say the number.

Student B: say the words.







# CELEBRATE

Bristol, in the UK, celebrates the 150th anniversary of the building of the Clifton Suspension Bridge

## SPEAKING

- 1 Check you understand the words in **red**. Then discuss the questions.

Your **birthday** celebrates the day you were born.

An **anniversary** celebrates the day something important happened, for example when people got married or a country became independent.

- Do you celebrate your birthday? What do you normally do?
- Do you celebrate any anniversaries? Which ones?
- Do you do anything for other people's birthdays or anniversaries?
- What important anniversaries are there in your country? Are there public holidays to celebrate them? What do you do?
- Have you been to a party recently? What did it celebrate?

## VOCABULARY Months

- 2 Work in pairs. Can you complete the names of the months?

Jan_____	May_____	Sep_____
Feb_____	Jun_____	Oct_____
Mar_____	Jul_____	Nov_____
Apr_____	Aug_____	Dec_____

- 3 **▶ 166** Listen and repeat the months.

- 4 Match phrases 1–4 with phrases a–d that have a similar meaning.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1 in <b>May</b>                         | a in the <b>second</b> or <b>third</b> week of <b>May</b> |
| 2 at the <b>beginning</b> of <b>May</b> | b <b>during</b> <b>May</b> .                              |
| 3 in the <b>middle</b> of <b>May</b>    | c in the <b>last</b> week of <b>May</b>                   |
| 4 at the <b>end</b> of <b>May</b>       | d in the <b>first</b> week of <b>May</b>                  |

- 5 **▶ 167** Listen and repeat the phrases from Exercise 4.

- 6 Complete 1–8 to make true sentences. Use months and phrases from Exercises 2 and 4. Change the words in **red**, if you need to.

- My birthday is \_\_\_\_\_.
- My** **parents'** anniversary is \_\_\_\_\_.
- My** **brother's** birthday is \_\_\_\_\_.
- The next public holiday is \_\_\_\_\_.
- I'm going to **Spain** **on** **holiday** \_\_\_\_\_.
- I went to see a **friend** **in** **Moscow** **in** \_\_\_\_\_.
- I had a **great** time \_\_\_\_\_.
- Last year was a **good** year. I \_\_\_\_\_ **in** **July**.

- 7 Work in pairs. Tell a partner your sentences. Are any the same?

## Dates

For most dates we add 'th' to the number:

4th (the fourth), 10th (the tenth), 15th (the fifteenth), etc.

1, 2, and 3 are irregular:

1st (the first), 2nd (the second), 3rd (the third)



## LISTENING

- 8 168 Listen to four conversations. In which conversation is someone going to have a party?

- 9 168 Choose the correct information. Listen again and check.

### Conversation 1

- a It's the 16th / 17th / 18th today.  
b It's the woman's brother's / sister's / son's birthday on Friday.

### Conversation 2

- a Their boss wants to meet on the 4th / 5th / 6th.  
b It's a public holiday / her boyfriend's birthday / her anniversary.

### Conversation 3

- a The man is going to be at a conference on a Friday / Saturday / Monday.  
b The woman got married 6 / 10 / 25 years ago.

### Conversation 4

- a The conference is to celebrate the school's 5th / 10th / 20th anniversary.  
b It's on Saturday 3rd / Saturday 13th / Saturday 23rd.

## GRAMMAR

- 10 Read the information in the box. Complete the questions from the conversations in Exercise 8 with the correct form of *be*, *do* or *can*.

### Questions review

We use a form of *be*, *do*, or *can* in different questions. Remember the word order.

Question word	<i>be</i> , <i>do</i> , etc.	person	verb phrase
1 How old	is	she?	
2 Where	_____	you	going?
3	_____	she	doing anything to celebrate?
4	_____	you	want to come?
5	_____	you	tell him it's a public holiday?
6	_____	we	meet on the 6th?

- 11 169 Listen and check.

- 12 Make questions. Put the words in order and add the correct form of *be*, *do* or *can*.

- 1 A: My birthday's next week.  
B: going to be / how old / you / ?  
*How old are you going to be?*  
2 A: My parents' anniversary is on July 17th.  
B: they / doing anything / ?  
3 A: It was my son's birthday last weekend.  
B: you / get him / what?  
4 A: It was a public holiday yesterday.  
B: go anywhere / you?

- 5 A: help me with my bags / you / ?  
B: Sure.  
6 A: I'm going to Spain on holiday.  
B: going with / who / you / ?  
7 A: Last year was a terrible year.  
B: terrible / why / it / ?  
8 A: I'm having a party on Sunday. / come / you / ?  
B: Of course! I'd love to.

- 13 Practise the conversations in Exercise 12. Take turns to start. Continue them.

- 1 A: *My birthday's next week.*  
B: *How old are you going to be?*  
A: *I don't want to say!*

- 14 Work in groups. Take turns to say true sentences from Exercise 6 and ask questions.

For more practice, see Exercises 1–3 on page 134.

## DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS

### Invitations

Invite: *Do you want to come ...? Can you come ...?*

Yes: *Sure. / I'd love to.*

Maybe: *What day? / What date? / I need to check (my diary / with my boss).*

No: *Sorry, I can't.*

Reason: *I'm going away. / I'm working. / I have a meeting.*

- 15 Complete the two conversations with one word in each space.

- a A: We are going to plan our visit to Rome next week.  
1 \_\_\_\_\_ you come?  
B: Maybe. What 2 \_\_\_\_\_?  
A: Tuesday morning?  
B: I think so, but I need to 3 \_\_\_\_\_ my diary. Can I call you later?  
A: OK.  
b A: It's our anniversary in January and we're having a party. Do 1 \_\_\_\_\_ want to 2 \_\_\_\_\_?  
B: I'd 3 \_\_\_\_\_ to. What 4 \_\_\_\_\_?  
A: The 27th.  
B: Oh, sorry, I 5 \_\_\_\_\_. I'm 6 \_\_\_\_\_ to be away.

## CONVERSATION PRACTICE

- 16 Prepare for the conversation.

- Write three things you are going to invite people to. Choose:  
a barbecue a party a weekend away  
a conference a meeting
- Decide the day/date and the reason for the event.

- 17 Have conversations like the ones in Exercise 15 with other people in the class. Give true answers.

170 For more practice, listen to two more examples.



# PERSONAL HISTORY

## REVIEW AND SPEAKING

### 1 Work in pairs. Choose two.

- Test each other on the words on page 97.
- Do the conversation practice on page 99 again.
- Tell your partner about two parties or special events you've been to in the last year.

## VOCABULARY Life events

### 2 Complete each group of collocations with the verbs in the boxes.

become die live lose start was born

- 1 live on the streets / live in a nice area / live with his mum
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ in Bogota / \_\_\_\_\_ in the 1960s / \_\_\_\_\_ near here
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ a teacher / \_\_\_\_\_ rich / \_\_\_\_\_ interested in art
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ a business / \_\_\_\_\_ a new life / \_\_\_\_\_ teaching
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ in an accident / \_\_\_\_\_ in her sleep / \_\_\_\_\_ of a heart attack
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_ your job / \_\_\_\_\_ your home / \_\_\_\_\_ money

do finish get go have move

- 7 \_\_\_\_\_ problems with the police / \_\_\_\_\_ an online shop / \_\_\_\_\_ a baby
- 8 \_\_\_\_\_ to prison / \_\_\_\_\_ to university / \_\_\_\_\_ into the army
- 9 \_\_\_\_\_ school / \_\_\_\_\_ to university / \_\_\_\_\_ working
- 10 \_\_\_\_\_ well at school / \_\_\_\_\_ a Master's / \_\_\_\_\_ a degree
- 11 \_\_\_\_\_ married / \_\_\_\_\_ divorced / \_\_\_\_\_ a job in a big company
- 12 \_\_\_\_\_ house / \_\_\_\_\_ to the countryside / \_\_\_\_\_ to the States

### 3 Choose eight words or phrases from Exercise 2 that you don't know or don't remember very well.

### 4 Work in groups. Ask each other about the new words from Exercise 2.

A: What does **prison** mean?

B: I don't know.

C: It's więzienie in Polish.

D: Like this. After a crime, you go to prison.



### 5 Write six sentences about people you know using the collocations.

My brother is going to become a teacher. He's at university now.

My friend Manu did a Masters a few years ago.



## READING

### 6 Check you understand sentences a–d. Then read about the businessman in the photo on page 101. Complete paragraphs 1–4 with sentences a–d.

- a When he was in prison, he started to change.
- b There are now over a hundred similar magazines around the world.
- c John Bird started a company called *The Big Issue*.
- d John knows about being homeless.

### 7 171 Read and listen to check.

### 8 Find six collocations in Exercise 2 that are true about John Bird.

### 9 Read the text again to check.

### 10 Discuss the questions.

- Are there homeless people in your town?
- Do they have any help from the government or other people?
- Do you think *The Big Issue* is a good idea?
- Who are the most famous business people in your country? What do they do? Did any of them come from a poor family?



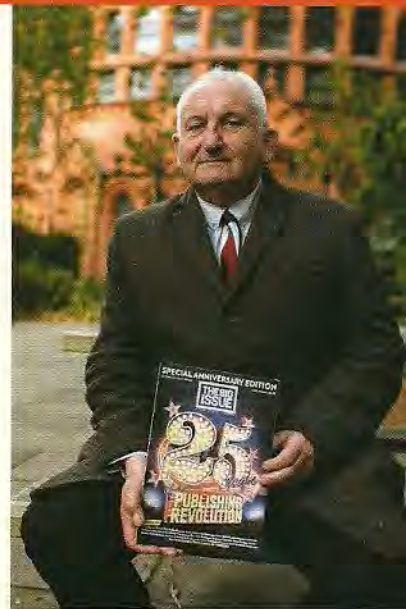
## A CHANGED LIFE: JOHN BIRD

1 \_\_\_\_\_. *The Big Issue* is a magazine that people sell in the streets. The sellers are often homeless (they don't have anywhere to live). They can buy magazines for £1.25 and sell them for £2.50. Doing this work can pay for somewhere to live, so they can start a new life.

2 \_\_\_\_\_. He was born in a very poor area of London. When he was five, his family lost their home. They lived on the streets for a short time. He then lived in a special home for children. He didn't see his parents much. He had problems at school. He was angry and he didn't learn a lot. After school, he wanted to go into the army, but he couldn't read. He also had problems with the police and he went to prison several times for different crimes.

3 \_\_\_\_\_. He learned to read and he studied. He became interested in politics. After he left prison, he went to art school and learned about printing. In the 1980s, he started a small printing business. The company did well. In 1991, he decided to use his skills to help homeless people – *The Big Issue* was born!

4 \_\_\_\_\_. For example, there's *The Big Issue* in Korea, *Aurora de Rua* in Recife, Brazil and *Calle* in Bogotá, Colombia. *The Big Issue* in the UK now also has an online shop and a kind of bank to help other similar businesses.



We usually use *could* as the past form of *can*.

He **couldn't** read until he was nine.

He **could** read when he was three.

### 11 Can you remember when these things happened in John Bird's life? Answer the questions.

- When did his family lose their home?
- When did he think about going into the army?
- When did he go to art school?
- When did he start his printing business?
- When did he start *The Big Issue*?

### 12 Check the answers to Exercise 11 in the Grammar box.

## GRAMMAR

### Explaining when: time phrases

We can add a phrase with *when*, *after* or *in* to show when something happens.

His family lost their home when he was five.

He wanted to go into the army after school.

He went to art school after he left prison.

He started a small printing business in the 1980s.

He started *The Big Issue* in 1991.

### 13 Choose the best word to complete the sentences.

- I finished university *in* / *when* 2011.
- After* / *In* the wedding, we went on holiday to Phuket.
- After* / *When* I was a child, I couldn't swim very well.
- My parents got divorced *in* / *when* I was fifteen.
- I was twelve *after* / *when* my baby sister was born.
- We got married *after* / *in* the year 2000.
- I couldn't find a job *after* / *when* university.
- After* / *In* I lost my job in the bank, I decided to start a business.

### 14 ▶ 172 Listen to six phrases starting *When I was*. They are fast then slow. Complete each phrase.

- |                             |                    |
|-----------------------------|--------------------|
| 1 when I was <u>a child</u> | 4 when I was _____ |
| 2 when I was _____          | 5 when I was _____ |
| 3 when I was _____          | 6 when I was _____ |

### 15 Complete six of the sentences with a time phrase. Make the sentences true. Change the words in **red**, if you need to.

- I finished school \_\_\_\_\_.
- I finished university \_\_\_\_\_.
- I got my first job \_\_\_\_\_.
- I became a doctor \_\_\_\_\_.
- I got my first car \_\_\_\_\_.
- I met my wife \_\_\_\_\_.
- I moved to my flat \_\_\_\_\_.
- I became interested in politics \_\_\_\_\_.
- I started a **business** \_\_\_\_\_.
- I had my first baby \_\_\_\_\_.



For more practice, see Exercises 1 and 2 on page 134.

## SPEAKING

### 16 Work in pairs. Take turns to say a sentence from Exercise 15. Ask and answer one question about it.

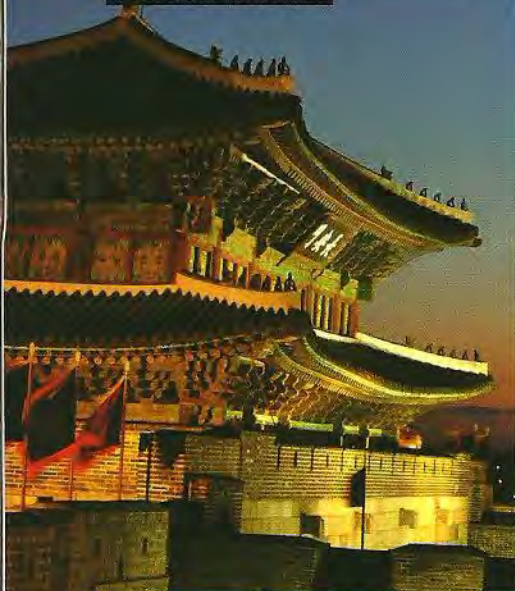
- |  |                                |
|--|--------------------------------|
| A: I finished school when I was seventeen. | A: I got my first car in 2015. |
| B: What did you do after that?             | B: What kind of car was it?    |
| A: I got a job.                            | A: A small Fiat.               |

## WRITING

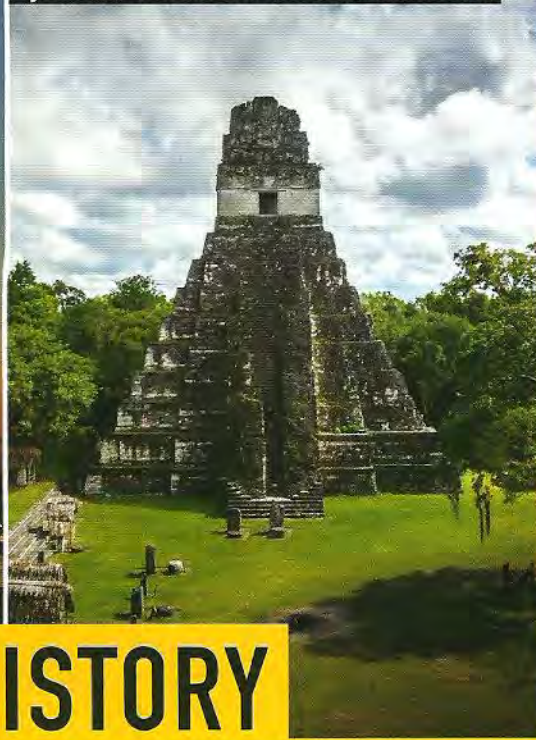
### 17 Write a short history of your life or of someone you know. Write six important things that happened and when they happened.



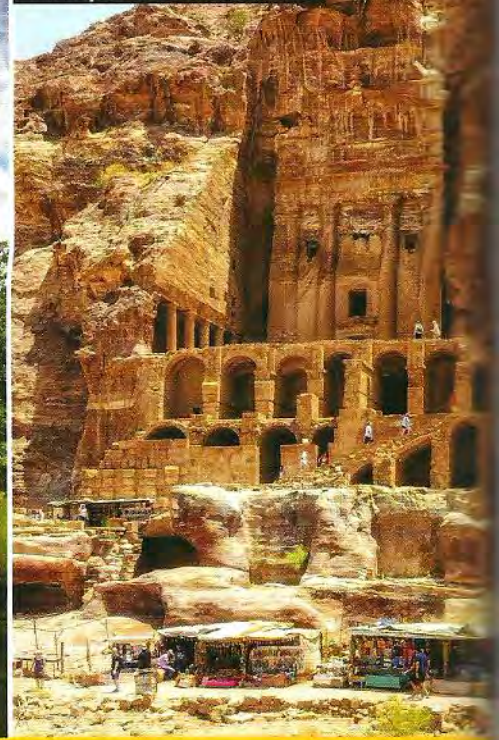
The walls of Suwon Hwaseong, a fortress in Korea



Pyramids and tombs in Tikal, Guatemala



A temple in Petra, Jordan



# ANCIENT HISTORY

## SPEAKING

### 1 Discuss the questions.

- Do you like visiting old places like the ones in the photos? Why? / Why not?
- Do you have any similar buildings in your country? Where? Have you been there?

## VOCABULARY History

### 2 Read the facts about history and places round the world. Look at the words in red. Guess what they mean.

- 1 The Great Pyramids of Egypt are over 140 metres high. The Eiffel Tower is 324 metres high.
- 2 Sobhuza the Second was **king** of Swaziland for over 82 years. After he died, his son Mswati the Third became king in 1986.
- 3 In 1793, the French **killed** their king, Louis the Sixteenth, and they didn't have another king for twenty years.
- 4 Kyoto was the **capital** city of Japan for over 1000 years. The capital changed to Tokyo in 1868.
- 5 In the fourteenth and fifteenth **centuries**, France and England were at war. They **fought** for over 100 years.
- 6 The Chinese started building the Great **Wall** over 2000 years ago to **protect** their country.
- 7 The walls of the Coliseum in Rome aren't **damaged** from war and fighting. The **damage** is from earthquakes.
- 8 In 1992 there was a big fire in Windsor Castle, a home of the Queen of England. It cost almost forty million pounds to **repair** the buildings.

### 3 Work in pairs. Explain what the words mean. Use your own language, draw or show the meaning, like Exercise 4 on page 100.

### 4 How many facts in Exercise 2 did you know?

## READING

### 5 Read the short history of Suwon Hwaseong. Answer the questions.

- 1 Who did they build the fortress for?
- 2 When did they build it?
- 3 Why didn't King Jeongjo like Seoul?
- 4 Why did they build schools and houses in it?
- 5 Why did the government spend money on the fortress?

## A VERY SHORT HISTORY OF SUWON HWASEONG

Suwon Hwaseong is a big fortress in Korea. It is thirty kilometres from the capital city, Seoul. The fortress was built for King Jeongjo in the 1790s after his father died. The king didn't like Seoul because his father was killed there, so he took his father's tomb to Suwon. He wanted to protect the tomb, so they built the fortress around it. But they also built schools and houses inside the walls, because King Jeongjo wanted to make Suwon the new capital city. People started living in Suwon, but it never became the capital.

In the 1950s, there was a war in Korea. Some parts of the fortress were damaged, so the government spent a lot of money after the war to repair the walls and buildings. After that, Suwon Hwaseong became a UNESCO World Heritage Site.

*a tomb* = place where you put a person's body after they die



## GRAMMAR

### Explaining why: *because* and *so*

*Because* and *so* show why something happens or happened.

We use *because* before explaining why (= the cause)

The king didn't like Seoul **because** his father was killed there.

They also built schools there **because** King Jeongjo wanted to make Suwon the new capital city.

We use *so* after explaining why (= the result)

The king didn't like Seoul, **so** he took his father's tomb to Suwon.

The fortress was damaged, **so** the government spent a lot of money to repair it.

Notice the comma (,) before *so*.

### 6 Complete each pair of sentences. Use *because* in one sentence and *so* in the other. Add the comma (,) before *so*.

- 1 a I'm studying English \_\_\_\_\_. I don't have much free time.  
b I'm studying English \_\_\_\_\_. I didn't do well in my English exam at school.
- 2 a I want to become a doctor \_\_\_\_\_. both my parents are doctors!  
b I want to become a doctor \_\_\_\_\_. I'm studying a lot of science at school.
- 3 a My parents got divorced \_\_\_\_\_. I live with my mother now.  
b My parents got divorced \_\_\_\_\_. they had money problems.
- 4 a He is in prison \_\_\_\_\_. he killed someone.  
b He is in prison \_\_\_\_\_. he can't vote in the election.

### 7 Write answers to these questions with *because*. Use a dictionary if you need to. Then tell your partner your answers.

- Why are you studying English?
- Why did you choose this school/teacher?
- Why do you (not) like where you live?
- Why do you like (or not like) your job? Why did you choose it?

**G** For more practice, see Exercises 1 and 2 on page 134.

## LISTENING

### 8 ▶ 173 Listen to some tourists asking a guide questions. Use the numbers in the box to answer *eight* of the questions.

1	2	5.7	6 or 4
47	130	800	1997

- 1 Why didn't Suwon become the capital? \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 How old was the king when he died? \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 How did he die? \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 How long did it take to build the fortress? \_\_\_\_\_ years.

- 5 How long are the walls? \_\_\_\_\_ kilometres.
- 6 And how high are they? \_\_\_\_\_ metres.
- 7 How much did they spend? \_\_\_\_\_ million dollars.
- 8 How big is the area inside the fortress? \_\_\_\_\_ hectares.
- 9 How many people live here now? \_\_\_\_\_ million.
- 10 When did it become a UNESCO site? \_\_\_\_\_.

### 9 Compare your answers. Can you remember the answers to the other two questions?

## READING AND SPEAKING

### 10 Work in groups of four. Divide into two pairs. Write questions about the UNESCO sites in the photos on page 102. Look at Exercise 8 for help, or use a dictionary.

Pair A: write five questions to ask about Tikal.

Pair B: write five questions to ask about Petra.

### 11 Give your questions to the other pair.

Pair A: read about Petra in File 9 on page 147. Try and find answers to pair B's questions. Write one more interesting fact.

Pair B: read about Tikal in File 8 on page 146. Try and find answers to Pair A's questions. Write one more interesting fact.

### 12 Work in your groups again. Don't look at the text. Ask and answer the questions about each place. Then tell each other the other interesting fact you learned.

### 13 Have you been on a guided tour? Where? Was it good? What did you learn?

## PRONUNCIATION AND REVIEW

### 14 ▶ 174 Listen to the sounds and the four words. Which word has a different sound?

- 1 /t/ queen king built business
- 2 /u:/ June move put choose
- 3 /ʌ/ luck become sure public
- 4 /ɜ:/ world bird history university
- 5 /ɔ:/ August poor fought rock
- 6 /a:/ high May die inside
- 7 /əʊ/ born October grow November
- 8 /i/ angry July century army

### 15 Practise saying the three words with the *same* sound in Exercise 14.

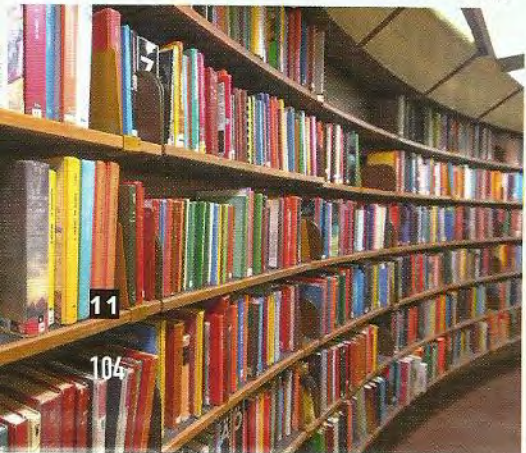
### 16 In two minutes write:

- months
- collocations about life events

**G** For more revision and pronunciation, see Exercises 1–3 on page 135.



# 12 THANK YOU AND GOODBYE







## IN THIS UNIT YOU LEARN HOW TO:

- tell someone a problem
- offer solutions and say thank you
- explain purpose
- talk about gifts
- tell people what to do
- say goodbye

## WORDS FOR UNIT 12

### 1 Look at the words and photos.

- |                                       |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| 1 a lot of <b>empty seats</b>         | 8 <b>hurry to the shops</b>                 |
| 2 the <b>theatre's full</b>           | 9 <b>miss the train</b>                     |
| 3 carry <b>heavy bags</b> of shopping | 10 the <b>seat's broken</b>                 |
| 4 I <b>hope</b> it's OK               | 11 they <b>lend books</b>                   |
| 5 <b>help</b> her to <b>stand</b>     | 12 put a <b>painting</b> on the <b>wall</b> |
| 6 <b>throw</b> it in the <b>bin</b>   | 13 some <b>lovely flowers</b>               |
| 7 the <b>sun's</b> very <b>strong</b> | 14 the <b>water's low</b>                   |

### 2 175 Listen and repeat the words.

### 3 Work in pairs. Don't look at the words.

Student A: say the number.

Student B: say the words.







# I'LL DO IT FOR YOU

## SPEAKING

**1** Work in groups. Discuss the questions. Use a dictionary if you need to.

- How much do you help family / friends / people you don't know? Give an example.
- How do you offer to help at home / at work / in class / in the street? Give an example.

*I helped my dad to build a wall in his garden.*

*I helped my friend Noe to move house.*

*I helped an old man I met on the train. I carried his bag.*

## LISTENING

**2** Look at the pictures (a–c). Discuss the questions.

- Where are the people?
- What problem do you think there is?
- How can the other person help?

**3** ▶ 176 Listen to three conversations and match 1–3 with pictures a–c.

Conversation 1 \_\_\_\_\_

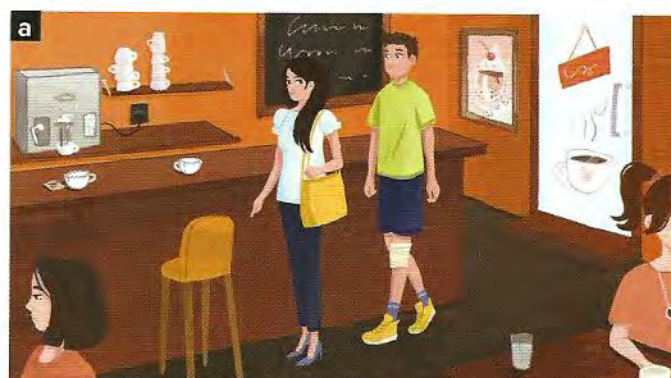
Conversation 2 \_\_\_\_\_

Conversation 3 \_\_\_\_\_

**4** Match the problem (1–3) with the solution (a–c).

- |                                |                                    |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1 It's coming out very slowly. | a I'll take you there.             |
| 2 I'm a bit lost.              | b I'll stand.                      |
| 3 It's very full.              | c I'll send someone to look at it. |

**5** ▶ 176 Listen again and check.





## GRAMMAR

**I'll**

We offer solutions to problems using **I'll** (I will) + verb.

### Verb phrase

stand.

take you.

send someone.

go and order some drinks.

We sometimes add *if you like/want*.

*I'll look for another seat, if you like.*

- 6 Complete the offers. Use **I'll** and one of these verbs.

check      go      take      wait

- 1 A: I'm quite hungry.  
B: \_\_\_\_\_ and get something. What do you want?
  - 2 A: I'm late for a meeting.  
B: \_\_\_\_\_ you in the car, if you want.
  - 3 A: Sorry, there's no space in the lift.  
B: It's OK. \_\_\_\_\_ for the next one.
  - 4 A: What time do the buses go into town?  
B: I'm not sure. \_\_\_\_\_ on the internet.
- 7 177 Listen and repeat the offers from Exercise 6.
- 8 Think of a *different* solution to each of the situations in Exercise 6.
- 9 Work in pairs. Have short conversations.  
Student A: say the problem.  
Student B: offer a solution. Take turns.

## VOCABULARY Offering solutions

- 10 Complete the problems with these words.

broken      heavy      low      working  
full      lost      strong      wrong

- 1 There's something \_\_\_\_\_ with my computer.
  - 2 I'm a bit \_\_\_\_\_. How do I get out of here?
  - 3 This coffee's not very \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 4 It's very \_\_\_\_\_. Where can we sit?
  - 5 You sat on my glasses! They're \_\_\_\_\_!
  - 6 The battery's very \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 7 My card's not \_\_\_\_\_. I can't pay for the meal!
  - 8 How are we getting home? The shopping's quite \_\_\_\_\_.
- 11 Work in pairs. Check you understand the words in red. Match the solutions (a–h) with the problems (1–8) from Exercise 10.
- a *I'll ask them to make another one.*
- b *I'll look for a seat.*

- c Do you want to use my charger?
- d Do you want to use this one?
- e Don't worry. I'll carry it.
- f I'll **show** you.
- g I'll **lend** you some money, if you like.
- h I'll **repair** them. I'll take them to a shop.

For more practice, see Exercises 1 and 2 on page 135.

- 12 178 Listen to the pairs of words. Do they have the same sound or different?

- |          |          |
|----------|----------|
| 1 broken | low      |
| 2 heavy  | seat     |
| 3 strong | lost     |
| 4 carry  | charger  |
| 5 lend   | repair   |
| 6 full   | computer |

- 13 178 Listen again and repeat the words.

## DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS

### Checking and thanking

If someone offers to help, we often check that it's OK.

Offer: A: *I'll stand.* A: *I'll take you, if you like.*

Check: B: **Are you sure?** B: *Really? Are you sure?*

Yes: A: *Yeah. It's fine.* A: *Yeah, it's fine. I'm going that way.*

Thanks: B: **OK. Thanks.** B: *Oh. That's great. Thanks.*

- 14 Put the conversation in the correct order (1–5).
- a Are you sure? I can wait a bit.
  - b OK. That's great. Thanks.
  - c I'll make something now.
  - d I'm quite hungry.
  - e It's fine. I need to eat, too.
- 15 Work in pairs. Practise the conversation from Exercise 14.

## CONVERSATION PRACTICE

- 16 Look at the problems in Exercise 10 again. Try to remember them.
- 17 Work in pairs. Close your books and have conversations like this. Take turns to start.

Student A

Student B

Say a problem from Exercise 10.

Check or just say thanks.

Offer a solution.

- 18 Think of another problem and write your own short conversation.

179 For more practice, listen to two more examples.



# WHAT A LOVELY GIFT!

## REVIEW AND SPEAKING

### 1 Work in pairs. Choose two.

- How many of the problems can you remember from page 107?
- Tell your partner about three problems you have or had using words on page 107.  
*The battery on my tablet is very low now.*  
*I got lost when I was on holiday in Bulgaria.*
- Write five things you often offer to do. Then have short conversations starting like this:

A: I'll \_\_\_\_\_.

B: Are you sure?

## READING

### 2 Work in groups. Discuss the questions.

- Do you like buying and giving gifts? Why? / Why not?
- Who did you last give a gift to? What was the gift?

### 3 Read a short blog about buying gifts. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)?

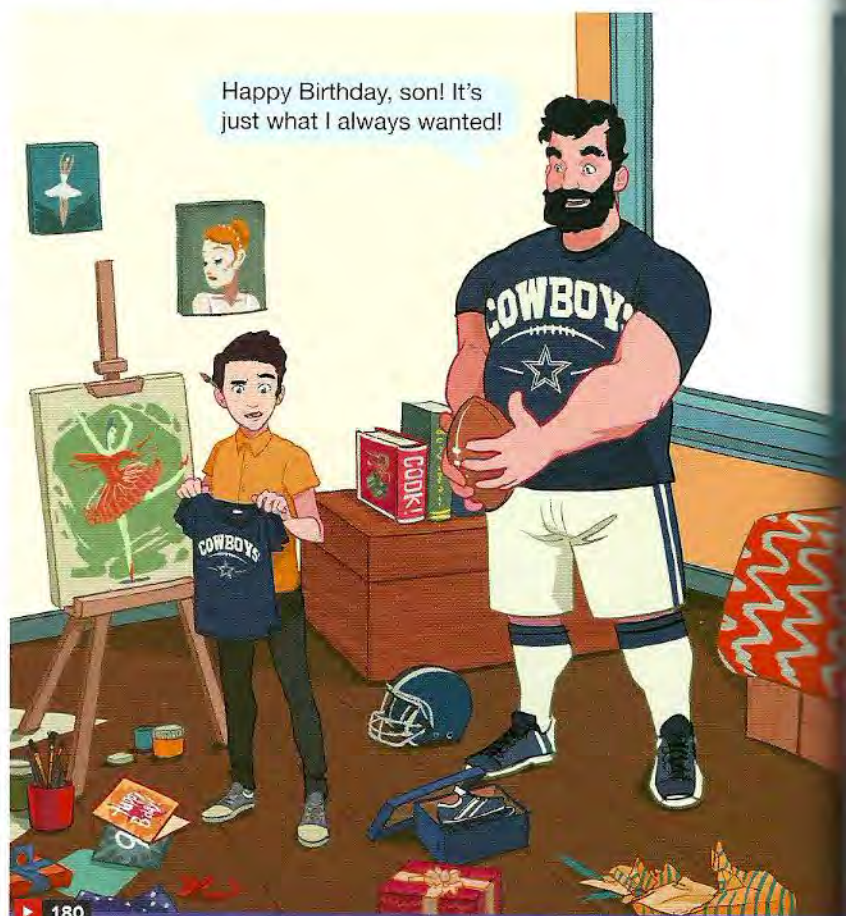
- 1 The writer's dad gave him a present when he was nine.
- 2 He liked his dad's gift.
- 3 The writer gives ideas about how to choose a good gift.
- 4 He thinks it's important to always give a gift for birthdays, etc.

### 4 Work in pairs. Complete the sentences with one of the words in red from the text. There are two you don't need.

- 1 I don't usually eat anything at breakfast – I \_\_\_\_\_ have a coffee.
- 2 I \_\_\_\_\_ go to bed. I need to get up early tomorrow morning.
- 3 This isn't very \_\_\_\_\_. I'm going to throw it in the bin.
- 4 Our neighbours are an old \_\_\_\_\_. I sometimes help them with their shopping.
- 5 I have a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ in the car. Can you help me carry it into the house? Some of the boxes are quite heavy.

### 5 Discuss the questions.

- Do you ever throw presents in the bin or give them to someone else?
- Do you think the writer's questions are good or not? Do you think about them when you buy a present?



## HOW TO ... GIVE BETTER GIFTS

For my ninth birthday, my dad bought me a full **set** of Dallas Cowboys football **stuff** (ball, shirt, boots, helmet, etc.). I'm sure some boys would love a present like that, but I was not one of those boys! I was not interested in football – and I was **definitely** not interested in playing it. I was small and I preferred cooking and dancing and art. I understood then that not everyone is good at buying gifts. We often buy things people don't really want. What happens to these bad gifts? We put them in a cupboard and forget about them – or we throw them in the bin! To give better gifts you **should** ask these questions.

- Who is the gift for? – how old are they? What do they like doing?
- What is the gift for? – is it for a **couple** getting married, or to thank someone?
- What are they going to do with it? Is it **useful**?
- Where are they going to put it?
- Do they really want it? Or is it just something *you* want?

You should also ask 'Do I really need to give a gift?' A lot of people are happy with **just** a thank you or some other nice words. They don't want anything else.



## GRAMMAR

- 6 Look at these two patterns. Complete the rule.

### Explaining purpose: *for* or *to*

He gave me a football **for** my birthday.  
Is it **to** thank someone?

I bought some flowers **for** the kitchen.  
I bought her some flowers **to** say sorry.

Do you have anything **for** a cold?  
Do you want something **to** eat?

There's nothing **for** children here.  
There's nowhere **to** sit.

We explain the purpose of something using \_\_\_\_\_ + noun or \_\_\_\_\_ + verb.

- 7 Complete the questions with *for* or *to*.

- Do you ever buy flowers \_\_\_\_\_ say sorry?
- Do you want anything \_\_\_\_\_ your birthday?
- Do you need anything \_\_\_\_\_ your house?
- Is there anywhere good near here \_\_\_\_\_ take my children?
- Do you know anywhere \_\_\_\_\_ repair a phone?
- Where's a good place \_\_\_\_\_ a party near here?
- Where's the best place \_\_\_\_\_ go \_\_\_\_\_ lunch?

- 8 Think of answers to the questions in Exercise 7.

- 9 Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions.

**G** For more practice, see Exercises 1–3 on page 136.

## SPEAKING

- 10 Work in groups. Discuss the questions.

- Do you think the things below are good gifts? Who for and what for?
- Would you like any of these gifts? Why? / Why not?

a computer game  
a T-shirt with 'I ♥ New York' printed on it.  
a special local food  
a book of photos of family or friends  
a plastic toy  
a box of chocolates or sweets  
some money  
a big book about your city with lovely photos  
some flowers  
something home-made (for example, a cake)  
a dress or shirt  
a piece of art (a painting or sculpture)

## WRITING

- 11 Write four sentences about things you want and things people gave you. Use these ideas. Change the words in **red**. Use a dictionary if you need to.

I want to get a **new table** for **my garden**.

I need to get a **visa** to **visit Russia**.

My girlfriend bought me a **ticket for the Grand Prix** for **my birthday**.

My brother bought me a **nice box** to **keep my jewellery** in.

- 12 Tell other people in the class some of your sentences.

- Who wants the same things?
- Who had the best presents?



Offering gifts at the Guelaguetza festival in Oaxaca, Mexico





# SAYING GOODBYE IS HARD TO DO

## SPEAKING

**1** Work in groups. How do you say goodbye? What do you say and do? Is it the same in all these situations?

- when you leave home in the morning
- at the end of a class or meeting
- at the end of an evening out with friends
- after staying at someone's home
- after meeting someone for the first time
- when a friend or one of your family is going away for a long time

## VOCABULARY Leaving and saying goodbye

**2** Complete the conversations with these words.

a call	forgot	journey	miss
enjoyed	hope	kind	order
everything	hurry	lovely	

- 1 A: Thanks for having me. I really \_\_\_\_\_ staying here.  
B: We loved having you. Come again some time.
- 2 A: It's getting late. It's twelve!  
B: Do you want me to \_\_\_\_\_ a taxi?  
A: Yes, please.

3 A: Bye, then.

B: Bye. Give me \_\_\_\_\_ when you're home.

A: OK.

4 A: It was \_\_\_\_\_ to meet you!

B: Yes. Great to meet you, too. I \_\_\_\_\_ we see each other again soon.

A: I hope so, too. **Stay in contact.** You have my email.

5 A: Here. I made you a sandwich for the \_\_\_\_\_.

B: Oh, thanks. That's very \_\_\_\_\_ of you.

A: That's OK.

6 A: You're back already! That was quick!

B: Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_ my book. I left it on the table.

A: Oh yes. Do you have \_\_\_\_\_ now?

B: I think so. Bye, again!

7 A: I need to go or I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ my train.

B: What time does it leave?

A: 10.20.

B: Oh right, yes. You need to \_\_\_\_\_. **Take care!**

**3** Work in pairs. Compare your answers. Guess the meaning of the words in **red**.

**4** Discuss the questions.

- Can you remember a time when you missed a train or plane? When? Why?
- Do you often need to hurry?
- Do you often forget things? What do you forget?
- How do you stay in contact with friends?



## GRAMMAR

- 5 ▶ 181 Listen to the goodbye conversation between Wilton (W) and Janet (J) (see Unit 3, page 30). Choose the word(s) you hear.
- J: The taxi's here. Do you have <sup>1</sup>all / everything?
- W: I think so.
- J: Well, it's been great.
- W: Yes. Thanks for <sup>2</sup>have / having me. I really enjoyed it.
- J: Us too. Give us <sup>3</sup>a call / a phone when you're home.
- W: I will.
- J: OK. See you. Stay in <sup>4</sup>email / contact.
- W: I will. I hope to come <sup>5</sup>back / here one day.
- J: I <sup>6</sup>think / hope so, too.
- W: And you could come and visit me!
- J: We'd love to. OK. Have a good <sup>7</sup>visit / journey.
- W: Thanks.
- J: Be safe – and don't <sup>8</sup>forget / remember to call us.
- W: I won't. Thanks again for everything. And <sup>9</sup>say / tell goodbye to your sons.
- J: I will. Bye!
- W: Bye.
- J: Bye.
- 6 Practise the conversation in pairs.
- 7 Read the Grammar box. Find two more examples of imperatives in Exercise 5.

### Telling people to do things: imperatives

#### Positive

You can tell people to do things using a **verb with no subject**.

A: **Give** us a call when you're home.

B: I **will**.

You can promise to do something by saying **I will**.

#### Negative

A: **Don't forget** to call us.

B: I **won't**.

You can promise *not* to do something by saying **I won't**.

You can also reply to imperatives with **OK**.

- 8 Choose the correct form.
- Has / Have a safe journey.
  - Don't be / Not be late!
  - Are / Be good!
  - Don't say / Say hi to your wife.
  - Ask / Don't ask him now. He's busy.
  - Don't hurry / Hurry up. We're going to miss the train.
  - Don't send / Send me a text when you're there.
  - Don't go / Go to the toilet now if you need to. But be / don't be quick!
  - Don't work / Work too hard. Don't get / Get some rest.
  - It's not important. Don't worry / Worry. Just forget / don't forget it!

- 9 ▶ 182 Listen and repeat five negative imperatives.

- 10 Take turns saying a sentence from Exercise 8. Reply with *I will*, *I won't* or *OK*.

**G** For more practice, see Exercises 1 and 2 on page 136.

## LISTENING AND SPEAKING

- 11 ▶ 183 Listen to two conversations where people say goodbye. Decide who is speaking in each conversation (a or b).

- a two friends  
b a brother and sister
- a a parent and child  
b two business people

- 12 ▶ 183 Work in pairs. Are the sentences (1–9) about Conversation 1 or Conversation 2? Write the number. Listen again and check.

- It's in the afternoon.
- It's at night.
- They talk about going out in two weeks.
- Someone is going to take a plane.
- Someone orders a taxi.
- Someone is going to miss a meeting.
- Someone says thanks.
- Someone walks home.
- Someone is going to send some documents.

- 13 Look at the situations in Exercise 1. Choose three. You are going to have conversations to say goodbye. Think about:

- what A (the person leaving) is going to say
- what B (the person staying) is going to say
- some phrases and imperatives from this lesson to use in each situation.

- 14 Work in pairs. Choose two situations each from Exercise 13. Practise saying goodbye in four different conversations. Take turns being A and B.

## PRONUNCIATION AND REVIEW

- 15 Find the four pairs of words with the same sound.

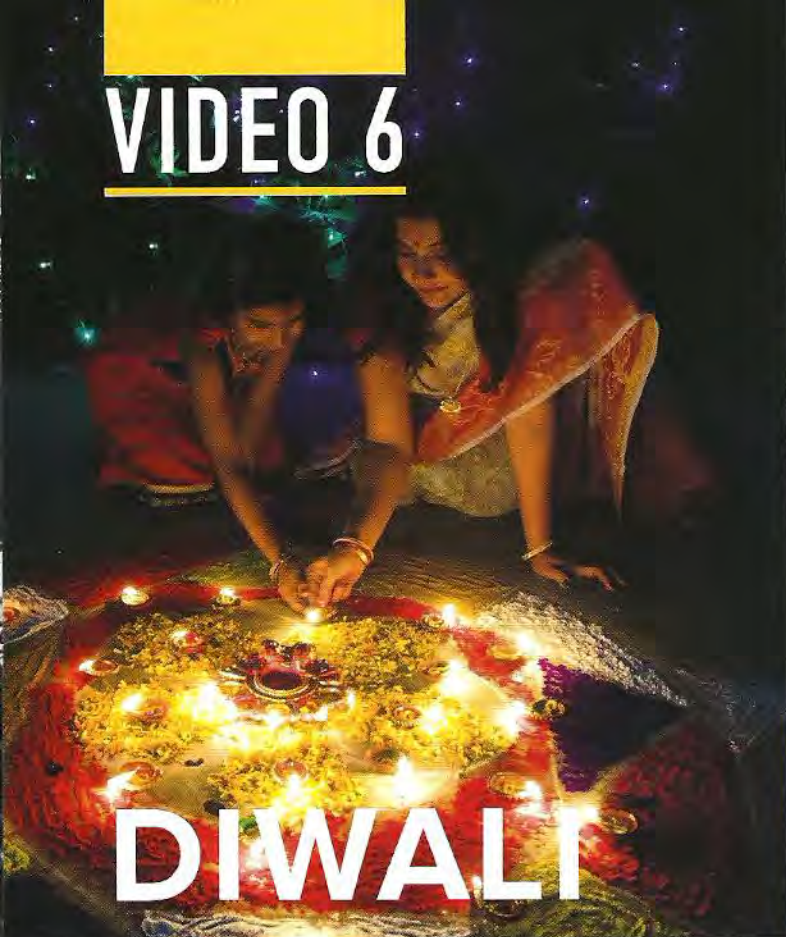
carry	lend	miss	order
send	stand	walk	give

- 16 ▶ 184 Listen to the four pairs of words and check your answers.
- 17 ▶ 185 Listen to the verbs in phrases. Write the full phrase you hear.
- 18 Work in pairs. Can you make two more phrases with each verb? Use a dictionary if you need to.

**G** For more revision and pronunciation, see Exercises 1–3 on page 136.



# VIDEO 6



## DIWALI



**1** Look at the photos of the festival of Diwali. Do you know anything about this festival? Which of the sentences do you think are true?

- 1 It happens in September.
- 2 It celebrates light and hope.
- 3 People draw flowers with sand.
- 4 People don't make food.
- 5 There are a lot of fireworks.

**2** **6** Watch the video. Which two sentences from Exercise 1 are false?

**3** Work in pairs. Read the sentences. Choose the correct ending (a or b).

- 1 People go to the market early
  - a to buy fresh bread.
  - b to buy flowers.
- 2 People draw flowers in sand
  - a because the children enjoy doing it.
  - b to say visitors are welcome.
- 3 People often make sweets
  - a for their neighbours.
  - b to take to the temple.
- 4 Shops are busy
  - a because people often get extra money for Diwali.
  - b because people usually buy new clothes for Diwali.
- 5 Many cities have a firework show on
  - a the first night.
  - b the last night.

**4** **6** Watch the video again and check.

**5** Complete the sentences about festivals with the correct form of these verbs.

celebrate	happen	make	take
enjoy	last	put	visit

- 1 The festival \_\_\_\_\_ in February.
- 2 The festival \_\_\_\_\_ three days.
- 3 The festival \_\_\_\_\_ the beginning of a new year.
- 4 People often \_\_\_\_\_ flowers and nice things in their homes.
- 5 People \_\_\_\_\_ a special fish dish on the main day.
- 6 People \_\_\_\_\_ friends and \_\_\_\_\_ them gifts.
- 7 Most people \_\_\_\_\_ the festival a lot, but some people don't like it.

## SPEAKING

**6** Work in groups. Answer the questions.

- Which of these things do you like / not like about festivals?

buying gifts	cooking
eating sweets and cake	fireworks
neighbours visiting your house	travelling home

- What is your favourite festival? What do you usually do during the festival?
- Do you know any festivals in other countries? When do they happen? What do they celebrate?
- When is the last time you got together with all your family? What did you do?



# REVIEW 6

## GRAMMAR

### 1 Choose the correct word(s).

- Are you hungry? / I / I'll make you a sandwich.
- The wall was damaged during the war *so* / *because* they needed to repair it.
- Do they have any food *to* / *for* vegetarians?
- Give *we* / *us* a call when you get home.
- I became a teacher *so* / *because* I didn't want to work in an office.
- Do you want *come* / *coming* / *to come* with us?
- It's a very good place *for* / *to* / *for to* take kids. They love it.
- Sleep well – and *not* / *don't* / *don't to* worry about the problems at work.

### 2 Complete the questions with these words.

are	did	does	was
can	do	is	were

- Why \_\_\_\_\_ you studying English?
- \_\_\_\_\_ you call me later? I want to know you're OK.
- Are you tired? \_\_\_\_\_ you want to sit here?
- How old \_\_\_\_\_ he when he died?
- What \_\_\_\_\_ your brother do? Is he a doctor?
- How old \_\_\_\_\_ your grandmother now?
- You didn't come to class last week. Where \_\_\_\_\_ you?
- How long \_\_\_\_\_ it take to build?

### 3 Write questions. Use the words in brackets.

- A: \_\_\_\_\_? (old / you)  
B: I'm 39 now. Nearly 40.
- A: We're having a party tonight.  
\_\_\_\_\_? (you / want / come)  
B: Oh, I'd love to. Thank you for inviting me.
- A: It's my birthday next week.  
B: \_\_\_\_\_? (old / you / be)?  
A: Twenty-one.
- A: \_\_\_\_\_? (when / become / a doctor)  
B: When I was 27. After I left university.
- A: \_\_\_\_\_? (like / job)  
B: Yes, I do. I love it.

### 4 ▶ 186 Listen and complete the sentences.

- I'm studying English \_\_\_\_\_ a good job.
- Where \_\_\_\_\_ going and \_\_\_\_\_ there?
- I'm studying English \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ my job.
- \_\_\_\_\_ some sleep – and \_\_\_\_\_ call me tomorrow.
- \_\_\_\_\_ a minute. \_\_\_\_\_ on the internet.

- 5 ▶ 186 Work in pairs. Compare your answers. Listen again to check.

## VOCABULARY

### 6 Match the verbs in the box with the correct groups of words (1–8).

become	do	have	move
celebrate	go	live	start

- \_\_\_\_\_ to university / into the army
- \_\_\_\_\_ interested in art / an important city
- \_\_\_\_\_ well at school / the same thing
- \_\_\_\_\_ our wedding anniversary / my birthday
- \_\_\_\_\_ problems at school / an online shop
- \_\_\_\_\_ a new life / teaching
- \_\_\_\_\_ with my mother and father / in a nice area
- \_\_\_\_\_ house / to the countryside

### 7 Put the words into three groups: life events, history or leaving and saying goodbye.

become a doctor	lovely to meet you
born in the 1980s	miss my train
call a taxi	protect the country
die in his sleep	repair the castle
finish school	a sandwich for the journey
forget my bag	start a business
king and queen	the fifteenth century

### 8 Write the dates in words (1–4), then write the names of the months (5–8).

- the 1st \_\_\_\_\_
- the 4th \_\_\_\_\_
- the 15th \_\_\_\_\_
- the 22nd \_\_\_\_\_
- the second month of the year \_\_\_\_\_
- the eighth month of the year \_\_\_\_\_
- the ninth month of the year \_\_\_\_\_
- the eleventh month of the year \_\_\_\_\_

### 9 Complete the sentences with these adjectives.

broken	full	lost	strong
empty	heavy	low	wrong

- Can you help me carry this? It's very \_\_\_\_\_.
- I don't want to use my phone at the moment. The battery is very \_\_\_\_\_.
- Don't sit on that chair. It's \_\_\_\_\_.
- Can you help me? There's something \_\_\_\_\_ with my computer.
- There's nowhere to sit here. It's very \_\_\_\_\_. Can we go somewhere else?
- Excuse me. Is this the right way to the station? I'm a bit \_\_\_\_\_.
- I didn't sleep very well. I need a \_\_\_\_\_ coffee.
- The restaurant wasn't very busy last night. There were lots of \_\_\_\_\_ seats.



# GRAMMAR REFERENCE

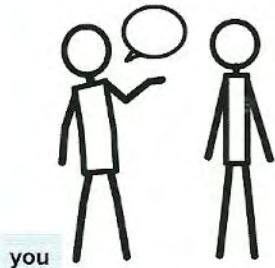
## 1 BE

### 'M, 'S, 'RE

#### Pronouns



I



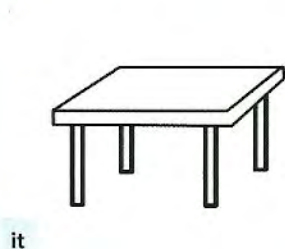
you



he



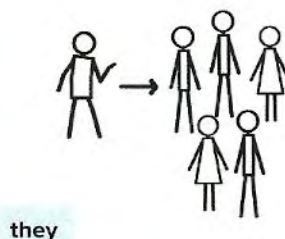
she



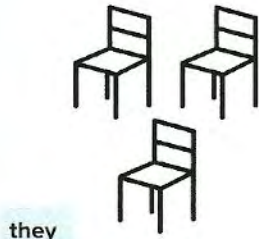
it



we



they



they

#### Exercise 1

▶ 187 Listen and repeat.

#### be

##### am

*I'm Andrew. (= I am)*

##### are

*You're Naomi, right? (= You are)*

*We're from Saudi Arabia. (= We are)*

*They're from China. (= They are)*

##### is

*She's a doctor. (= She is)*

*It's good. (= It is)*

*That's right. (= That is)*

*My daughter's 6. (= My daughter is)*

*He's my boss. (= He is)*

*This is my brother.*

#### Exercise 2

▶ 188 Listen and write the missing word.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 'm Juan. Nice to meet you.
- \_\_\_\_\_ is my teacher, Lena.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 's my sister.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 're in the same class.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 's nice.
- Who are \_\_\_\_\_?
- What's \_\_\_\_\_?
- \_\_\_\_\_ son is three today.

#### Exercise 3

Write the sentences with the 'm, 're, 's forms.

- I am from Berlin. *I'm from Berlin.*
- He is from London. \_\_\_\_\_
- My name is Cathy. \_\_\_\_\_
- We are friends. \_\_\_\_\_
- They are in my class. \_\_\_\_\_
- You are in class 6. \_\_\_\_\_
- She is my teacher. \_\_\_\_\_
- That is right. \_\_\_\_\_

I'm	Stella.	name
	Javier.	
	OK.	adjective
	good.	
	a teacher.	person/job
	her father.	
	from London.	place
	in the class.	

#### Exercise 4

Write four sentences about you and four sentences about another person. Use a dictionary if you need to.

- I'm \_\_\_\_\_  
 I'm \_\_\_\_\_  
 I'm \_\_\_\_\_  
 I'm \_\_\_\_\_  
 My \_\_\_\_\_ 's \_\_\_\_\_.  
 My \_\_\_\_\_ 's \_\_\_\_\_.  
 My \_\_\_\_\_ 's \_\_\_\_\_.  
 My \_\_\_\_\_ 's \_\_\_\_\_.

#### QUESTIONS WITH BE

##### am

*I'm sorry.*

*What class **am** I in?*

##### are

*You're right.*

*How **are** you?*

*We're in class 1.*

*Where **are** we?*

*They're very nice.*

*Where **are** they from?*

##### is

*He's nice.*

*How old **is** he?*

*She's a teacher.*

*Who **is** she?*

*It's ten o'clock.*

*How much **is** it?*

*This **is** my book.*

*Who **is** this?*

*Your son's nice.*

*How old **is** your son?*



### Exercise 1

Complete the sentences with *are*, *is* or *'s*.

- 1 A: Where \_\_\_\_\_ he from?  
B: Kuwait.
- 2 A: How old \_\_\_\_\_ you?  
B: Twenty.
- 3 A: What \_\_\_\_\_ your name?  
B: Maria.
- 4 A: How long \_\_\_\_\_ the class?  
B: Three hours.
- 5 A: How old \_\_\_\_\_ your brother?  
B: Seventeen.  
A: \_\_\_\_\_ he here?  
B: No, he's at school.
- 6 A: Where \_\_\_\_\_ your father from, Reo?  
B: Aizuwakamatsu.  
A: \_\_\_\_\_ it a big place?  
B: No. It \_\_\_\_\_ very small.

### Exercise 2

Put the words in the correct order to make questions.

- 1 you / where / are / from *Where are you from?*
- 2 much / how / are / they
- 3 he / is / who
- 4 how / are / old / you
- 5 their / what / names / are
- 6 you / how / are
- 7 what / is / time / bus / the

### Exercise 3

Match the answers with the questions from Exercise 2.

- a Khalid and Fatima.
- b Dubai.
- c \$25.50.
- d Twenty-one.
- e My husband.
- f Eleven o'clock.
- g Good, thanks.

### Yes/No questions and short answers

<b>Am I OK here?</b>	Yes, you <b>are</b> .	No, you're <b>not</b> .
<b>Are you OK?</b>	Yes, I <b>am</b> .	No, I'm <b>not</b> .
<b>Are we in the right class?</b>	Yes, you <b>are</b> .	No, you're <b>not</b> .
<b>Are they from Tokyo?</b>	Yes, they <b>are</b> .	No, they're <b>not</b> .
<b>Is he 16?</b>	Yes, he <b>is</b> .	No, he's <b>not</b> .
<b>Is your son at school?</b>	Yes, he <b>is</b> .	No, he's <b>not</b> .
<b>Is she your teacher?</b>	Yes, she <b>is</b> .	No, she's <b>not</b> .
<b>Is it expensive?</b>	Yes, it <b>is</b> .	No, it's <b>not</b> .
<b>Is this your book?</b>	Yes, it <b>is</b> .	No, it's <b>not</b> .

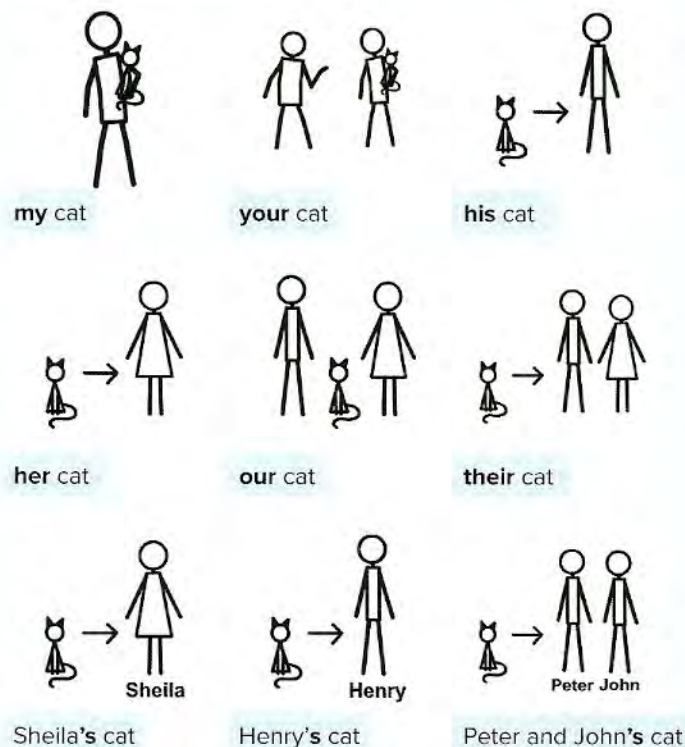
### Exercise 4

Write a short answer to these questions.

- 1 Are you Olivia? (✓) Yes, I **am**.
- 2 Is your name Omar? (X) No, it's **not**.
- 3 Am I late? (✓)
- 4 Are we in this class? (✓)
- 5 Are you OK? (X)
- 6 Is he sixteen? (✓)
- 7 Is she your wife? (X)
- 8 Is it right? (X)
- 9 Are they your mother and father? (✓)
- 10 Is this your bag? (✓)

## HIS, HER, OUR, THEIR

Possessive adjectives and 's



### Exercise 1

A Complete the sentences with *my*, *your*, etc. or *[name]'s*.

- 1 His name is Karim.
- 2 Karen's husband is a teacher.



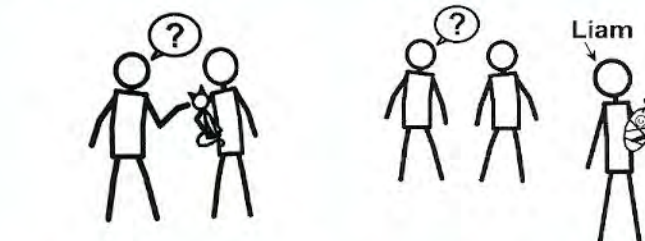
3 \_\_\_\_\_ name's Ulla.

4 \_\_\_\_\_ address is 15 New Road.



5 Where's \_\_\_\_\_ new flat?

6 When's \_\_\_\_\_ party?



7 What's \_\_\_\_\_ name?

8 Is \_\_\_\_\_ new baby a boy or a girl?





- 9 What's \_\_\_\_\_ name? 10 What's \_\_\_\_\_ phone number?

**B** ▶ 189 Listen and check.

### Exercise 2

Choose the correct word(s).

- 1 ☒ My am from Oman.
- 2 I / My name is Fadi.
- 3 How old are you / your?
- 4 Is you / your class good?
- 5 Where's he / him from?
- 6 What time is they / their party?
- 7 How long is we / our class?
- 8 Who are they / their?
- 9 Here's I / my phone number. It's / He's 07490028.
- 10 I / My son's at university. She's / He's 21.
- 11 This is Maria. She / Her is in we / our English class.
- 12 He / Her husband is I / my boss.

### NOT

I'm **not** from Moscow. It's large – **not** small.  
 You're **not** 18. It's 20 euros – **not** 30.  
 We're **not** from here. He's 20 – **not** 16!  
 They're **not** new. I'm from Manchester – **not** London.  
 It's **not** a black tea.  
 He's **not** my husband.  
 She's **not** a doctor.

### Exercise 1

Tick (✓) the correct sentence.

- 1 a My name's not Chelsea. ✓  
b Not my name's Chelsea.
- 2 a It's a large coffee – small not.  
b It's a large coffee – not small.
- 3 a I is not from New York.  
b I'm not from New York.
- 4 a How old you are?  
b How old are you?
- 5 a Where is she from?  
b Where she's from?
- 6 a I'm no Leo.  
b Are you Leo?
- 7 a He's her brother. Her name's Pedro.  
b He's her brother. His name's Pedro.
- 8 a They is not from here.  
b They're not from here.

## PRONUNCIATION

### Exercise 1

**A** ▶ 190 Listen and complete the questions. They're fast.

- 1 Who \_\_\_\_\_?
- 2 Where \_\_\_\_\_?
- 3 Where \_\_\_\_\_ from?
- 4 How much \_\_\_\_\_?
- 5 What day \_\_\_\_\_?
- 6 What \_\_\_\_\_?
- 7 How old \_\_\_\_\_?
- 8 What time \_\_\_\_\_?
- 9 How much \_\_\_\_\_?
- 10 How \_\_\_\_\_?
- 11 How old \_\_\_\_\_?
- 12 Where \_\_\_\_\_?
- 13 Who \_\_\_\_\_?
- 14 How long \_\_\_\_\_?

**B** ▶ 191 Listen again and check. They're slow.

## 2 LIVE, WORK, EAT

### PRESENT SIMPLE

Verbs: (to) live, know, like, have, take, work

I	live near here.
You	know the city.
We	like it here.
They	work here.
My mother and father	have a nice house.
He	lives near here.
She	knows the city.
My brother	likes it here.
My friend Karen	has a nice flat.
It	
The bus	takes 10 minutes.

### Exercise 1

Choose the correct word.

- 1 I live / lives in a flat.
- 2 My mother and father live / lives near me.
- 3 My friend Ali have / has a nice flat.
- 4 You know / knows the park. He live / lives near there.
- 5 I know / knows your sister. She work / works in the university, right?
- 6 We walk / walks to school. It take / takes an hour.
- 7 My wife like / likes Moscow, but I like / likes St Petersburg.
- 8 My family live / lives in a small village. We know / knows everyone in the village!

### PRESENT SIMPLE QUESTIONS: DO YOU ...?

Where		live?
Who	do you	live with?
What time		go to work?
		live near here?
	Do you	know it?
		like it?



### Exercise 1

**A** Write *do you* in the right places in the conversation.

There are one or two in each part 1–5.

- 1 A: Where <sup>do you</sup> live?  
B: In Beppu, know it?
- 2 A: No. Where is it?  
B: It's a small city in the south of Japan.  
A: like it?
- 3 B: Yes. It's a nice place. Where live?  
A: Birmingham, know it?  
B: Yes. My friend lives there!
- 4 A: What's his name?  
B: Bryan.  
A: know his family name?
- 5 B: No. Sorry, like Birmingham?  
A: Yes, it's OK.

**B** ▶ 192 Listen and check.

*be or do?*

**Be**

Where **are you** from?

How **are you**?

**Are you** OK?

**Are you** married?

**Other verbs**

Where **do you** live?

What **do you** do?

**Do you** have a sister?

**Do you** know it?

### Exercise 2

Complete the questions with *are* or *do*.

- Where \_\_\_\_\_ you from?
- What \_\_\_\_\_ you do?
- How old \_\_\_\_\_ your children?
- Who \_\_\_\_\_ you?
- Where \_\_\_\_\_ you live? Is it near?
- \_\_\_\_\_ you have a brother?
- \_\_\_\_\_ you OK?
- \_\_\_\_\_ you know my friend, Sara?
- Where \_\_\_\_\_ you work?

### Exercise 3

Match the answers (a–i) with the questions in Exercise 2.

- I'm a teacher.
- France.
- Five and seven.
- I'm fine, thanks.
- Yes, he's sixteen.
- Not far. I have a flat in Little Street.
- In an office.
- No. Nice to meet you.
- My name's Alex. I work here.

### Exercise 4

Tick (✓) the correct question (a or b).

- a Do you like it? ✓  
b You like?
- a Are you live near here?  
b Do you live near here?
- a Do it far?  
b Is it far?
- a How are you?  
b How do you?
- a Where you from?  
b Where are you from?
- a What do you?  
b What do you do?

## PRESENT SIMPLE: DON'T (DO NOT)

**Negative forms**

I <b>work</b> 50 hours a week.	I <b>don't work</b> here.
I <b>walk</b> to work.	I <b>don't walk</b> to work.
You <b>like</b> the area.	You <b>don't like</b> the area.
We <b>have</b> a house.	We <b>don't have</b> a house.
They <b>have</b> a big car.	They <b>don't have</b> a car.

### Exercise 1

Choose the correct word(s).

- I *like* / *don't like* my job. It's good.
- I *like* / *don't like* meat. It's bad.
- I *work* / *don't work*. I'm at school.
- I *work* / *don't work*. I'm retired.
- I *work* / *don't work* in a hospital. I'm a nurse.
- I *have* / *don't have* a paid job. I'm at home with my son. He's two.
- I *have* / *don't have* children. One daughter and one son.
- I *have* / *don't have* a car. I take the bus.

**Yes/No questions and short answers**

Questions	Short answers	
	+	–
I <b>have</b> time for a coffee?	Yes, you <b>do</b> .	No, you <b>don't</b> .
You <b>live</b> here?	Yes, I <b>do</b> .	No, I <b>don't</b> .
Do they <b>like</b> fish?	Yes, they <b>do</b> .	No, they <b>don't</b> .
Jia and Fan <b>work</b> ?	Yes, they <b>do</b> .	No, they <b>don't</b> .

### Exercise 2

Write a short answer.

- Do we have something to eat? (–)  
No, we **don't**.
- Do you know her sister? (–)
- Do you live near Bob? (+)
- Do they like London? (+)
- Do you have a car? (–)
- Do we have time for a coffee? (+)
- Do your children live with you? (–)

## PLURAL / NO PLURAL

**Plurals**

**Regular**

singular	plural (+ -s)
a daughter	two daughters
a nurse	five nurses
a flat	a lot of flats
a boy	some boys
a bus	two buses
a city	some cities

**Irregular**

singular	plural (no -s)
child	children
person	people
man	men
woman	women



### Exercise 1

Write the correct word in each sentence.

#### 1 job / jobs

- a I have a good \_\_\_\_\_. I like it.  
b My brother works a lot. He has three \_\_\_\_\_.

#### 2 son / sons

- a I have three \_\_\_\_\_ and a daughter.  
b My \_\_\_\_\_ is a nurse.

#### 3 teacher / teachers

- a I'm a \_\_\_\_\_ in a university.  
b It's a big school with eighty \_\_\_\_\_.

#### 4 person / people

- a Sixty \_\_\_\_\_ work at my company.  
b She's a nice \_\_\_\_\_.

#### 5 flat / flats

- a We have two \_\_\_\_\_. One in the city and one in a village.  
b Our \_\_\_\_\_ is near here.

#### 6 woman / women

- a All the English teachers in my school are \_\_\_\_\_.  
b Francisca is a great \_\_\_\_\_. She's a good friend.

### No Plural

money The money **is** good.  
work I do **a lot of** work.  
meat The meat **is** nice.  
time I don't have time.

### Exercise 2

Tick (✓) the correct sentences.

- 1 a The hours are bad. ✓  
b The hours is bad.  
2 a I eat a lot of meats.  
b I eat a lot of meat.  
3 a I have some money.  
b I have some moneys.  
4 a The people at work is nice.  
b The people at work are nice.  
5 a My children is sixteen.  
b My child is sixteen.  
6 a I don't like my works.  
b I don't like my work.  
7 a Most people in the office are men.  
b Most people in the office are man.

### Exercise 3

Write plurals. Two words have no plural.

- 1 a village / some small \_\_\_\_\_  
2 a block of flats / lots of \_\_\_\_\_ of flats  
3 one green salad / three green \_\_\_\_\_  
4 one brother and one sister / two \_\_\_\_\_ and three \_\_\_\_\_  
5 fruit / lots of \_\_\_\_\_  
6 a shop / lots of \_\_\_\_\_  
7 a kebab / two \_\_\_\_\_  
8 a job / lots of \_\_\_\_\_  
9 one room / five \_\_\_\_\_  
10 wine / some \_\_\_\_\_  
11 a chicken curry / two chicken \_\_\_\_\_

### LIKE / DON'T LIKE

#### PLURAL WORDS

I (don't) like them

burgers  
chips  
oranges  
apples  
cakes  
pizzas  
people  
children

#### NO PLURAL

I (don't) like it

meat rice  
chicken bread  
fish fruit  
sugar cheese  
tea coffee  
wine beer  
money work

### Exercise 1

Write the correct sentences.

(😊) = I love it/them

(😞) = I don't like it/them

(🙂) = I like it/them

- 1 oranges (😊) I love them. 6 cheese (😊)  
2 chicken (😞) I don't like it. 7 pizzas (😊)  
3 coffee (😞) 8 wine (😊)  
4 burgers (😞) 9 work (😊)  
5 chips (😊) 10 children (😊)

### PRONUNCIATION

#### Exercise 1

A ▶ 193 Listen to these words. They are fast then slow.

- 1 do you  
2 are you

B ▶ 194 Listen and choose the words you hear (a or b).

- 1 a do you b are you  
2 a do you b are you  
3 a do you b are you  
4 a do you b are you  
5 a do you b are you  
6 a do you b are you  
7 a Are you OK? b Where do you work?  
8 a Where are you from? b Where do you live?  
9 a When are you here? b When do you work?  
10 a Are you from here? b Do you live here?  
11 a Are you friends? b Do you know him?  
12 a How are you? b How do you get there?

#### Exercise 2

▶ 195 Listen and write the five questions you hear.

## 3 LOVE, WANT, NEED

### NEGATIVES WITH BE

am

I'm hungry.

I'm not hungry.

are

You're very good.

You're not very good.

We're in Spain.

We're not in Spain.

They're friends.

They're not friends.



is

He's well.                      He's **not** well.  
 She's at school.              She's **not** at school today.  
 He's married.                He's **not** married.  
 It's very big.                 It's **not** very big.  
 This **is** my class.            This **is not** my class.  
 My son **is** tired.            My son's **not** tired.  
 The room's cold.            The room's **not** cold.

### Exercise 1

Tick (✓) the correct sentence (a or b).

- 1 a It's not very expensive. ✓  
b Not it's very expensive.
- 2 a This exercise not is difficult.  
b This exercise is not difficult.
- 3 a I not Russian.  
b I'm not Russian
- 4 a We's not married.  
b We're not married.
- 5 a You're not old!  
b Your not old!
- 6 a My mum and dad are not here.  
b My mum and dad is not here.

### Exercise 2

Complete the sentences with the negative form of *be*.

- 1 He \_\_\_\_\_ from America. He's from Canada.
- 2 You \_\_\_\_\_ in this class. Sorry.
- 3 They \_\_\_\_\_ married.
- 4 We \_\_\_\_\_ retired. We work.
- 5 I \_\_\_\_\_ Conrad. I'm Constan.
- 6 I want it – and it \_\_\_\_\_ very expensive.
- 7 Sorry. My brother \_\_\_\_\_ here today.
- 8 It \_\_\_\_\_ a big town. It has 12,000 people.
- 9 Grammar \_\_\_\_\_ difficult. It's easy.
- 10 I \_\_\_\_\_ in this hotel. It's very expensive!

### be: contractions

We also sometimes say *be* negatives in these ways:

You **aren't** = You're **not**  
 We **aren't** = We're **not**  
 They **aren't** = They're **not**  
 It **isn't** = It's **not**  
 He **isn't** = He's **not**  
 She **isn't** = She's **not**  
 He **isn't** from America. He's from Canada.  
 You **aren't** in this class. Sorry.

## PRESENT SIMPLE: DOESN'T

### Negative forms

Person	don't/ doesn't	Verb
He		<i>live here.</i>
She		<i>work.</i>
My brother	<b>doesn't</b>	<i>have any money.</i>
Andrew		<i>like it.</i>
It	<b>doesn't</b>	<i>take long.</i>
I		<i>live here.</i>
You		<i>work.</i>
We	<b>don't</b>	<i>have any money.</i>
They		<i>like it.</i>

**don't** = do not; **doesn't** = does not

### Exercise 1

Make the sentences negative.

- 1 I like fish. *I don't like fish.*
- 2 My son likes meat.
- 3 It takes a long time.
- 4 My mum and dad have a big house.
- 5 My friend Mikel has a very good job.
- 6 She lives near here.
- 7 We like this city.
- 8 I have money.

## PRESENT SIMPLE QUESTIONS: DOES

Question word	does	person	verb
What		he	<i>do?</i>
Where		she	<i>work?</i>
Who	<b>does</b>	Ali	<i>live with?</i>
How long		it	<i>take?</i>
What time		your wife	<i>get home?</i>
		it	<i>take a long time?</i>
	<b>Does</b>	he	<i>live here?</i>
		your sister	<i>have a car?</i>

### Exercise 1

Add *do*, *don't*, *does* or *doesn't* in the correct part of the conversations. You need one or two in each conversation.

- 1 A: I'm sorry, I know your name.  
I'm sorry, I *don't* know your name.  
B: Andrea.
- 2 A: you know this area?  
B: No. I live here.
- 3 A: What your mother do?  
B: She work now. She's retired.
- 4 A: Where Maria live?  
B: I know. Ask Simon. He knows her well.
- 5 A: Where your girlfriend work?  
B: Sorrento.  
A: How long it take to get there?  
B: Twenty or thirty minutes.

### be or do?

be + adjective/noun	do + verb
I'm not <b>hungry</b> .	I don't <b>know</b> .
He's not <b>English</b> .	He doesn't <b>work</b> now.
Are they <b>police</b> ?	Do they <b>have</b> a car?
Is your father very <b>old</b> ?	Does your mum <b>work</b> ?

### Exercise 2

Choose the correct word.

- 1 What *do / is / does* she eat for lunch?
- 2 What time *are / is / does* your bus?
- 3 Where *is / does / do* he live?
- 4 *Does / Is / Do* your boss married?
- 5 Where *do / does / are* you from?
- 6 My daughter *don't / isn't / doesn't* eat meat.
- 7 *Is / Does / Do* your father like his job?
- 8 She *work / works / is work* in a school.
- 9 Where *is / are / do* your parents live?
- 10 *Are / Is / Do* the people in your class nice?



## A and ANY

I <b>don't</b> have	<b>a</b>	charger.
I <b>don't</b> need		pen.
I <b>don't</b> want		brush.
		towel.
Do you have	<b>any</b>	pens?
Do you need		towels?
Do you want		other clothes?
		milk?
		money?
		toothpaste?
		anything (else)?

### Exercise 1

Complete the sentences with **a** or **any**.

- I have \_\_\_\_\_ flight at seven tomorrow.
- Do you want \_\_\_\_\_ rice?
- I'm sorry. I don't have \_\_\_\_\_ time this week.
- It's \_\_\_\_\_ good restaurant.
- I don't have \_\_\_\_\_ friends here.
- My father is \_\_\_\_\_ driver and my mother is \_\_\_\_\_ nurse.
- Do you have \_\_\_\_\_ pens?
- I work in \_\_\_\_\_ coffee shop. It's \_\_\_\_\_ nice job.
- My mother works in \_\_\_\_\_ hospital.
- Do you have \_\_\_\_\_ milk?

Use **an** before a vowel sound.

I want **an** ice cream.

**An** orange juice, please.

**an** English class

## PRONUNCIATION

### Exercise 1

**A ▶ 196** Listen to the phrases. They are fast then slow.

- does he
- does she
- does it

**B ▶ 197** Listen and choose the sentence you hear (a or b).

- Where does he work?
  - Where do you work?
- What time does the shop open?
  - What time does your class start?
- Does your brother have a car?
  - Do you have a car?
- Does he live near here?
  - Is it near here?
- What does she do?
  - What does it do?
- Do you know everyone?
  - Does she know your mum?
- Does he like it?
  - Does she like it?
- What does he know?
  - What does she know?

### Exercise 2

**▶ 198** Listen to the sentences. They are fast. Are they negative (-) or positive (+)?

- |                   |                 |                  |
|-------------------|-----------------|------------------|
| 1 <u>      </u> + | 5 <u>      </u> | 9 <u>      </u>  |
| 2 <u>      </u> - | 6 <u>      </u> | 10 <u>      </u> |
| 3 <u>      </u>   | 7 <u>      </u> | 11 <u>      </u> |
| 4 <u>      </u>   | 8 <u>      </u> | 12 <u>      </u> |

## 4 WHERE AND WHEN?

### IS THERE ...? THERE'S ...

*Is there a park near here?*

*Is there a bank near here?*

*There's one on this road.*

*There's a shop on the corner.*

We use *is there* ... ? and *there's* with singular nouns.

### Exercise 1

Complete the sentences with *is there* or *there's*.

- A: I need to get some money. \_\_\_\_\_ a cash machine near here?

B: Oh, right. \_\_\_\_\_ one in the bus station.
- A: \_\_\_\_\_ a park near here?

B: I'm sorry. I don't know the area.
- A: Do you know a bar called Lisboa?

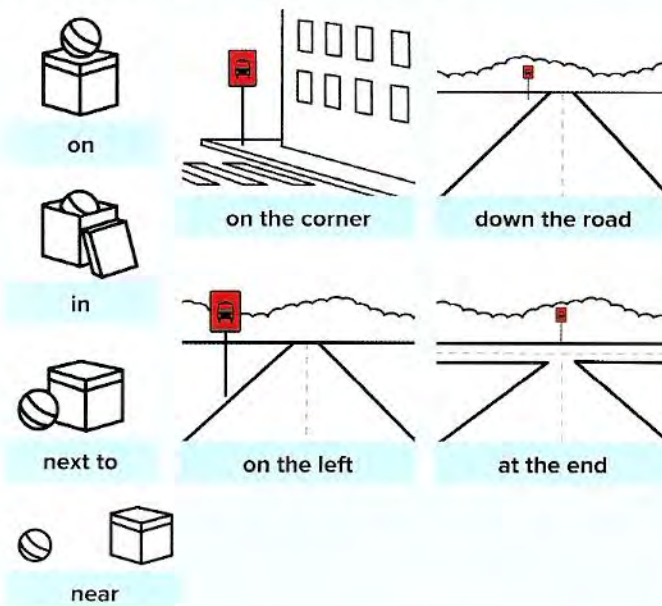
B: No. \_\_\_\_\_ a place down there. I don't know its name.
- A: \_\_\_\_\_ a supermarket near here?

B: No, sorry, but \_\_\_\_\_ a fruit and vegetable shop on this road.
- A: \_\_\_\_\_ a car park near here?

B: Yes, \_\_\_\_\_ one next to the supermarket.
- A: \_\_\_\_\_ a café near here?

B: \_\_\_\_\_ one in the square. Go down there.

## PREPOSITIONS AND DIRECTIONS





### Exercise 1

Put the preposition in the correct place.

- 1 There's a small shop <sup>on</sup> the corner of this road. (on)
- 2 There's a restaurant the hotel. (in)
- 3 The hotel is the centre. (near)
- 4 The school is the main square. (in)
- 5 There's a nice café the school. (next to)
- 6 It's the next road. (on)
- 7 There's a swimming pool the park. (in)
- 8 There's a shop the next corner. (on)
- 9 There's a small park the end of our street. (at)
- 10 Is there a toilet the second floor? (on)
- 11 It's this road. Then take the second the right. (down / on)

### Exercise 2

Put the words in the correct order.

- 1 near / a / here / supermarket / there / is / ?  
*Is there a supermarket near here?*
- 2 road / a / hotel / on / this / there's / .
- 3 a / shop / there's / near / the / train / station / .
- 4 there / is / a / cash / here / near / machine / ?
- 5 one / there's / the / corner / on / .
- 6 near / is / swimming / pool / a / there / here / ?
- 7 at / there's / of / one / the / end / this / road / .

## ADVERBS OF FREQUENCY

### With be

The bank **is** always closed on Monday.

It's **not** normally busy on Thursday.

He's often late.

English **is** sometimes difficult.

I'm never late.

**Are** you normally free on Saturday?

### With other verbs

Supermarkets normally **open** at 8 in the morning.

Children **don't** usually **have** classes at the weekend.

I sometimes **have** tea.

We **don't** often **have** coffee.

We never **work** on Friday.

**Do** you normally **work** late?

### Exercise 1

Put the adverb in the correct place in each sentence.

- 1 I go out on Saturday night. (usually)  
*I usually go out on Saturday night.*
- 2 They're late. (always)
- 3 I work on Saturday. (sometimes)
- 4 I go to mosque on Friday. (always)
- 5 I'm free on Wednesday afternoon. (normally)
- 6 I go swimming. (never)
- 7 We don't go out at night in the week. (usually)
- 8 I'm busy at the weekend. (never)
- 9 He's not here in the afternoon. (usually)
- 10 They go to the beach on Sunday morning. (sometimes)
- 11 I don't go to the cinema. (often)

### Exercise 2

▶ 199 Listen to the sentences. They are fast. Add the adverb you hear.

- 1 I'm \_\_\_\_\_ late.
- 2 We \_\_\_\_\_ go to church on Sunday.
- 3 I'm not \_\_\_\_\_ busy on Thursday.
- 4 I \_\_\_\_\_ walk to work.
- 5 I \_\_\_\_\_ take the bus.
- 6 My wife \_\_\_\_\_ works in the evening.
- 7 My husband \_\_\_\_\_ has lunch at home.
- 8 My brother \_\_\_\_\_ takes my things.

## CAN ...?

We use **can/can't** + verb.

**Can** I help you?

I **can** help.

I **can't** help.

**Can** you help me?

You **can** help.

You **can't** help.

**Can** he come tomorrow?

He **can** come.

He **can't** come.

**Can** she speak English?

She **can** speak French.

She **can't** speak English.

**Can** we do it now?

We **can** do it.

We **can't** do it.

**Can** they wait?

They **can** wait.

They **can't** wait.

### Exercise 1

Complete the questions with the correct verb.

change get go help say sit wait write

- 1 My English isn't good. Can you \_\_\_\_\_ it again slowly, please?
- 2 I have a big problem. Can you \_\_\_\_\_ me?
- 3 I don't know this word. Can you \_\_\_\_\_ it on the board?
- 4 Can you \_\_\_\_\_ one minute? I need to finish this.
- 5 I don't know how to get there. Can I \_\_\_\_\_ with you?
- 6 I don't have my book. Can I \_\_\_\_\_ next to you and share yours?
- 7 Can you \_\_\_\_\_ me a coffee? And I think Ben wants a tea.
- 8 This isn't chicken. It's fish. Can you \_\_\_\_\_ it, please?

## Short answers

We sometimes say **can** / **can't** in the answers.

**Can** I open the window?

Of course you **can**.

Yes, you **can**.

**Can** I open the window?

I'm sorry, you **can't**.

No, you **can't**.



## Exercise 2

Complete the sentences with *can* or *can't*.

- 1 A: \_\_\_\_\_ you help me?  
B: Sorry, I \_\_\_\_\_ now. I'm busy.
- 2 A: It's difficult to hear. \_\_\_\_\_ you play it again?  
B: Of course I \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 A: I don't feel well. \_\_\_\_\_ I leave early?  
B: Of course you \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 A: I \_\_\_\_\_ see the board very well. \_\_\_\_\_ I sit at the front?  
B: Sorry, you \_\_\_\_\_. But I \_\_\_\_\_ turn on the light. Does that help?  
A: Yes, thanks.

## Exercise 3

Write sentences with *can* and these words.

- 1 help me? (you)  
*Can you help me?*
- 2 hear you (I / not)
- 3 cook lots of different things (my mum)
- 4 speak English (they / not)
- 5 leave early (we)
- 6 write it on the board? (you )
- 7 come in now. (she)
- 8 help you? (I)
- 9 share a book? (you three)

## PRONUNCIATION

### Exercise 1

**A ▶ 200** Listen to the words. They are fast then slow.

- 1 can
- 2 can't

**B ▶ 201** Listen and choose the words you hear. They are fast.

- |                                  |                                 |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1 a Sorry, I can.                | b Sorry, I can't.               |
| 2 a You can.                     | b You can't.                    |
| 3 a Can you?                     | b Can't you?                    |
| 4 a I can see.                   | b I can't see.                  |
| 5 a Can I use your phone?        | b Can't I use your phone?       |
| 6 a You can sit here.            | b You can't sit here.           |
| 7 a You can come in.             | b You can't come in.            |
| 8 a I can play it again.         | b I can't play it again.        |
| 9 a Can we leave now?            | b Can't we leave now?           |
| 10 a He can use my tablet.       | b He can't use my tablet.       |
| 11 a They can help you.          | b They can't help you.          |
| 12 a Can you turn off the light? | b Can't you turn off the light? |

## 5 GOING PLACES

### ARE THERE ...? / THERE ARE ...

**There are + plural nouns**

There are      fifteen      shops on this street.  
                     some      nice restaurants in the village.  
                     several      people outside.  
                     a lot of  
                     no

There aren't      nice places near here.

Are there      any      cafés near here?  
                                 people outside?

## Remember

People, children, men and women are plural!  
There **are** always lots of **people** there.

With the singular, we use these forms:

### There's ... + singular nouns

There's a/no train station in the village.

There isn't a restaurant in the hotel.

Is there a cinema near here?

There are no ... = there aren't any ...

There's no ... = there isn't a ...

## Exercise 1

Make these sentences plural.

- 1 There's a man outside. *There are some men outside.*
- 2 There's no toilet. *There are no toilets.*
- 3 There's no bar near here.
- 4 There's a shop on this road.
- 5 There's a restaurant in the square.
- 6 There's no cinema in the area.
- 7 There isn't a hospital in the town.
- 8 There's one person in the café.
- 9 There's only one man in our class.

## Exercise 2

Read the conversations with a hotel receptionist. Write one word in each space.

### Conversation 1

- A: Hello. Can I help you?  
B: Yes. I want to have a walk. <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ there any nice places near here?  
A: There <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ a nice park down the road.  
B: How do you get there?  
A: It's best to take a bus. It takes ten minutes. There <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ four every hour.  
B: Can I buy the ticket on the bus?  
A: No. There's <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ machine next to the bus stop.

### Conversation 2

- A: Hi, I want to go into town. Are there <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ buses going there now?  
B: Sorry. You need to drive – or take a taxi.  
A: OK. Is there <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ taxi place near here?  
B: No, but I can call one.  
A: There <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ six people in our group.  
B: OK. I can ask for two.  
A: Thanks. How much is it normally?  
B: Fifteen euros.  
A: OK. <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ there a cash machine here?  
B: Yes. There <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ one over there. Next to the toilets.  
A: Oh yes. Thanks.

### Short answers

We sometimes use short answers in replies to *Are there ...?*

**Are there any good films at the cinema?**

Yes, there **are**.

No, there **aren't**.



### Exercise 3

Complete the conversations with short answers.

- A: Are there any good places to eat here?  
B: No, \_\_\_\_\_. You need to go into the city.
- A: Is there a hotel near here called the Grand View?  
B: Yes, \_\_\_\_\_. It's on the main road.
- A: Is there a supermarket near here?  
B: No, \_\_\_\_\_, but there's a shop at the end of the road which sells fruit and vegetables and things.

### TALKING ABOUT PLANS: I'M/WE'RE GOING ...

Plan	Where / What	When
<i>I'm going</i> <i>We're going</i>	home	now.
	to a café	this afternoon.
	to the shops	at six. tonight.
	to have lunch	tomorrow.
	to meet my sister	on Saturday.
	to see the game	after the class.

Compare with the present simple for habits (*always, usually, etc.*):

*I normally go home at five.*

*I go to mosque on Friday.*

*I often go to see my grandparents at the weekend.*

### Exercise 1

Complete with *am/ 'm, are/ 're* or *do*.

- A: I \_\_\_\_\_ going to meet Joan later.  
B: Oh, OK. Say hello.
- A: We \_\_\_\_\_ going to the shops. \_\_\_\_\_ you need anything?  
B: Can you buy some milk?
- A: \_\_\_\_\_ you know Madrid?  
B: Not really. Why?  
A: I \_\_\_\_\_ going there at the weekend.
- A: I \_\_\_\_\_ going home now.  
B: Really? \_\_\_\_\_ you OK?  
A: Yes. I \_\_\_\_\_ fine, but I need to do some work.
- A: \_\_\_\_\_ you like football?  
B: Yes.  
A: We \_\_\_\_\_ going to see the game tonight.  
\_\_\_\_\_ you want to come?

### Exercise 2

Sentences 1–8 are wrong. They need one more word. Write the correct sentence.

- I going home at seven.  
*I'm going home at seven.*
- We're going to the beach Saturday.  
*We're going to the beach on Saturday.*
- Am going to the cinema tonight.
- We're to have a coffee.
- I'm going the park after the class.
- We going to see the Old Town tomorrow.
- We're going meet some friends later.
- We're going to finish six.

### Exercise 3

Choose the correct sentence (a or b).

- a I normally go to the beach on Sundays.  
b I'm normally going to the beach on Sundays.
- a I go to have lunch later.  
b I'm going to have lunch later.

- a We're sometimes going to play tennis.  
b We're going to play tennis today.
- a I go to the cinema a lot.  
b I go to the cinema tonight.
- a We're going to have a walk now.  
b We have a walk now.

### Other forms after go

<i>I'm going</i>	<i>shopping</i>	<i>now.</i>
<i>We're going</i>	<i>swimming</i>	<i>this afternoon.</i>
<i>I need to go</i>	<i>running</i>	<i>at six.</i>
<i>Do you want to go</i>	<i>for lunch</i>	<i>tonight.</i>
	<i>for dinner</i>	<i>tomorrow.</i>
	<i>for a walk</i>	<i>on Saturday.</i>
	<i>for a run</i>	<i>after the class.</i>
	<i>for a coffee</i>	

### Exercise 4

▶ 202 Listen and complete.

- Do you want to go for a \_\_\_\_\_?
- I'm going \_\_\_\_\_ later.
- I'm going for a \_\_\_\_\_. Do you want to come?
- We're going \_\_\_\_\_ on Saturday.
- Do you want to go out for \_\_\_\_\_ tonight?
- I need to go for a \_\_\_\_\_.

### ASKING ABOUT PLANS: GOING AND DOING

#### Are you going?

What time  
Where

*are you going?*

What

*are you doing after the class?*  
*are you doing tonight?*

Compare with the present simple for *want, need* and *habits*.

*What time do you need to be there?*

*Where do you want to go?*

*What do you do?* (= *What's your job?* / *What do you normally do there?*)

### Exercise 1

Choose the correct word(s).

- A: What are you *do / doing* tonight?  
B: Nothing special. Why?
- A: *Do / Are* you want to go for lunch with us?  
B: Sure. Where are you going?
- A: I'm going to meet a friend later. Do you want to come?  
B: Where *are / do* you going?
- A: I sometimes need to work late, but I like my job.  
B: What *do you do / are you doing*?
- A: We're going out later – if you want to come.  
B: Where *do you go / are you going*?
- A: *What time / Where* are you going to the party tonight?  
B: Ten o'clock.

### Other questions

<i>When</i>	?
<i>Why</i>	?
<i>Who</i>	<i>are you going with?</i>
<i>How long</i>	<i>for?</i>



## Exercise 2

**A** Complete the conversations 1–6 with the answers a–e.

- Eight?
- My boyfriend.
- My company has an office there.
- Krakow – it's a city in Poland.
- Two weeks.
- I'm going to the dentist in the morning and I'm going to meet a friend at the airport in the afternoon.

- A: I'm going to Qatar next week.  
B: Why are you going?  
A: \_\_\_\_\_
- A: Do you want to go to the dinner together?  
B: Sure. What time?  
A: \_\_\_\_\_
- A: We're going to Costa Rica on holiday.  
B: How long are you going for?  
A: \_\_\_\_\_
- A: I'm sorry. I'm not free tomorrow.  
B: What are you doing?  
A: \_\_\_\_\_
- A: I'm going to see *An American in Paris* tonight.  
B: Nice! Who are you going with?  
A: \_\_\_\_\_
- A: I'm going away for the weekend.  
B: Where are you going?  
A: \_\_\_\_\_

**B** ▶ 203 Listen and check.

## PRONUNCIATION

### Exercise 1

**A** ▶ 204 Listen to the phrases. They are fast, then slow.

- |                    |                 |
|--------------------|-----------------|
| 1 there are some   | 4 there isn't a |
| 2 there's a        | 5 Are there any |
| 3 there aren't any | 6 Is there any  |

**B** ▶ 205 Listen and choose the words you hear (a or b).

- a there are some  
b there's a
- a there aren't any  
b there isn't a
- a there's a  
b there isn't a
- a there are some  
b there aren't any
- a Are there any  
b Is there a
- a Are there any good places to visit?  
b Is there a good place to eat?
- a There aren't any shops near here.  
b There are some shops near here.
- a There's no parking here.  
b There's some parking here.
- a Is there a bus to the airport?  
b Are there any buses to the airport?
- a There are two cash machines there.  
b There's a cash machine there.
- a There's a shop at the end of the road.  
b There are shops at the end of the road.
- a There's something in the back of the car.  
b There are some things in the back of the car.

## 6 AWAY FROM HOME

### PAST SIMPLE: COMMON IRREGULAR VERBS

The verb **be** has two past forms – **was** and **were**.

ALL other verbs have only **one** past form.

The most common verbs – *be, have, go, do* – are all **irregular**. Learn them as words.

Person	Present	Past
I	<i>am</i>	<b>was</b>
she/he/it	<i>is</i>	<b>was</b>
you/we/they	<i>are</i>	<b>were</b>
I/you/we/they	<i>have</i>	<b>had</b>
she/he/it	<i>has</i>	<b>had</b>
I/you/we/they	<i>do</i>	<b>did</b>
she/he/it	<i>does</i>	<b>did</b>
I/you/we/they	<i>go</i>	<b>went</b>
she/he/it	<i>goes</i>	<b>went</b>

You can find a list of past forms for other verbs in *Outcomes Beginner* on page 138.

#### Past time words

last night	yesterday
last Friday	yesterday morning
last week	yesterday afternoon
last year	

### Exercise 1

Choose the correct word.

- I *go / went* to the mountains last weekend.
- I usually *have / had* lunch at one o'clock, but I don't have time today.
- I *have / had* a lot of work last night. I *go / went* to bed late.
- I love basketball. I often *go / went* to see a game.
- We *are / were* from Brazil. And you?
- Sorry I'm late. There *is / was* a problem at the airport.
- A: How was your journey?  
B: It *is / was* fine, but I *am / was* tired now.
- A: How are your parents?  
B: They *are / were* fine, thanks.
- A: What do you do?  
B: Well, I *am / was* retired now, but I *am / was* a nurse.
- A: What did you do yesterday?  
B: Not much. I *do / did* some work and I *go / went* to the gym.

### Exercise 2

Complete the two sentences with the correct form of the verbs. One sentence is present, one sentence is past.

- be**
  - We were at home all day yesterday.
  - My mum and dad are from Morocco.
- go**
  - I usually \_\_\_\_\_ to my father's village at the weekend.
  - My wife \_\_\_\_\_ to Rome last week for business.
- do**
  - We \_\_\_\_\_ some shopping yesterday.
  - I usually \_\_\_\_\_ all my homework.



#### 4 have

- I \_\_\_\_\_ a very nice lunch with my family last Sunday.
- My brother \_\_\_\_\_ a good job. The money's very good.

#### 5 be

- How \_\_\_\_\_ your hotel?
- How \_\_\_\_\_ the film last night?

### REGULAR PAST SIMPLE ENDINGS

Regular past simple forms end in **-ed**.

#### Present Past

love(s)	I <b>loved</b> the film.
rain(s)	It <b>rained</b> a lot last week.
stay(s)	We <b>stayed</b> in a nice hotel.
share(s)	We <b>shared</b> a kitchen.
talk(s)	He <b>talked</b> a lot.
want(s)	She <b>wanted</b> to go out last night.
need(s)	They <b>needed</b> to do some work.

You can find a list of past forms for other verbs in *Outcomes Beginner* on page 138.

#### Exercise 1

Make these sentences past.

- They talk a lot.
- I need a coffee.
- We share a flat.
- It rains a lot in April.
- She loves him.
- I want to go.

#### Exercise 2

Complete the text with the past form of the verbs.

We <sup>1</sup> went (go) to the north of Spain on holiday. We <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (want) to see the mountains. We <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (stay) in a small hotel in a village called Oubanca. We <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a great view from our room. It <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (is) really beautiful. We <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (walk) in the area every day. It <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (rain) one or two times, but the weather <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (is) good. We <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ (love) it. We want to go there again.

### PAST SIMPLE NEGATIVES

Past negatives use a past form of *be* or *do*. Compare the present and the past negatives.

#### Present

##### Be

There **isn't** anyone at the meeting.  
We **aren't** hungry.

##### All other verbs

I **don't** know.  
We **don't** go out a lot.  
He **doesn't** have any money.

#### Past

There **wasn't** anyone at the meeting.  
We **weren't** hungry.

I **didn't** know.  
We **didn't** go out last night.  
He **didn't** have any money.

#### Exercise 1

Choose the correct form.

- I didn't like it. It *was* / *wasn't* very good.
- The weather wasn't very good. It *rained* / *didn't rain* a lot.
- We didn't see a lot. We *had* / *didn't have* time.
- We didn't have a lot of money. We *stayed* / *didn't stay* in a cheap place.
- I'm really hungry now. I *don't* / *didn't* have any breakfast this morning.
- I didn't understand him. I *don't* / *didn't* speak Russian.

#### Exercise 2

Complete the sentences with the past simple negative or present simple negative of the verbs.

- I didn't go out yesterday. (go out)
- I \_\_\_\_\_ last week. (work)
- I'm going home. I \_\_\_\_\_ well. (feel)
- We \_\_\_\_\_ usually \_\_\_\_\_ lunch at home. (have)
- It took a long time to get here. We \_\_\_\_\_ the way. (know)
- My mother \_\_\_\_\_ meat. She's a vegetarian. (eat)

### PAST SIMPLE QUESTIONS

To make past questions with a verb use a past form of *do*. Compare present and past questions.

#### Present

**Do you** like it?  
**What do you** do?  
**Where do you** live?  
**What time do you** go home?

#### Past

**Did you** like it?  
**What did you** do last night?  
**Where did you** live before?  
**What time did you** go home?

#### Exercise 1

Read the answers and complete the questions in the past simple or present simple.

- A: What / do?  
B: I work for a technology company.
- A: What / do last night?  
B: I had dinner with some friends.
- A: Where / go after the class?  
B: We went shopping.
- A: have a nice time on holiday?  
B: Yes, it was great, thanks.
- A: Where / your parents live?  
B: With me! But they also have a house in a village near here.
- A: What time / get up this morning?  
B: Five o'clock! That's why I'm so tired now!

#### Past simple questions with *be*

#### Present

**Where are** you from?  
**How's** the hotel?  
**Is** he OK?  
**Are** they happy?

#### Past

**Where were** you yesterday?  
**How was** the hotel?  
**Was** he OK?  
**Were** they happy?



## Exercise 2

Complete the questions with the correct past simple form of *be*.

- 1 Where \_\_\_\_\_ you last week?
- 2 How \_\_\_\_\_ the party yesterday?
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ there a lot of people there?
- 4 Why \_\_\_\_\_ they late?
- 5 How much \_\_\_\_\_ the tickets?
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_ it difficult to get there?

## Exercise 3

Match the answers with the questions in Exercise 1.

- a Great. The music was great and we danced a lot.
- b There was a problem at the airport. Their flight was delayed.
- c I was on holiday.
- d They were free!
- e No. We got a taxi from the airport.
- f Not really. Fifteen or twenty.

## Exercise 4

Read the answers and write full questions in the past simple.

- 1 A: What / do in St Petersburg?  
B: Lots of things. We went to see an opera one night.
- 2 A: What / see?  
B: Faust.
- 3 A: Good?  
B: Yes, it was.
- 4 A: Where / be?  
B: The Mariinsky Theatre.
- 5 A: How long / the opera?  
B: About three hours.
- 6 A: Sleep?  
B: No, I didn't! I saw all of it!

## Short answers

We sometimes use short answers in replies.

- |                                      |                               |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| A: <b>Did</b> you go out last night? | A: <b>Was</b> it a good tour? |
| B: Yes, I <b>did</b> .               | B: Yes, it <b>was</b> .       |
| B: No, I <b>didn't</b> .             | B: No, it <b>wasn't</b> .     |

## REVISION

### Exercise 1

Look at the example. Find five more sentences that are wrong. Correct them.

- 1 Did you went to the museum? ~~X~~ Did you go to the museum?
- 2 I went to see my brother in hospital yesterday. ✓
- 3 The hotel didn't had a nice restaurant.
- 4 There is a big problem at work last week.
- 5 Did you eat on the plane?
- 6 We go to the beach yesterday afternoon.
- 7 What you do yesterday evening?
- 8 We stayed in lots of nice places in Romania.
- 9 I not see you yesterday. Where were you?
- 10 How was your day?

## PRONUNCIATION

### Exercise 2

▶ 206 Listen to the sound of the regular past forms.

- 1 /d/ loved, rained, stayed, shared
- 2 /t/ talked
- 3 /ɪd/ wanted, needed

### Exercise 3

▶ 207 Listen and repeat.

- 1 It rained a lot last week.
- 2 I stayed at home.
- 3 My brother talked to them.
- 4 I wanted to sleep.
- 5 I needed to eat something.
- 6 I shared a room with my sister.
- 7 I loved Costa Rica.

### Exercise 4

A ▶ 208 Listen to the words. They are fast, then slow.

- 1 do you
- 2 did you

B ▶ 209 Listen and choose the words you hear (a or b).

- 1 a do you  
b did you
- 2 a do you  
b did you
- 3 a do you  
b did you
- 4 a do you  
b did you
- 5 a Do you know anyone here?  
b Did you know anyone there?
- 6 a Do you want a coffee?  
b Did you want a coffee?
- 7 a What do you do?  
b What did you do last night?
- 8 a What time do you go to bed?  
b What time did you go to bed?
- 9 a Do you live here?  
b Did you live there?
- 10 a Do you have any money?  
b Did you have any money?
- 11 a Where do you go?  
b Where did you go?
- 12 a Do you sleep well?  
b Did you sleep well?

## 7 GOING OUT AND STAYING IN

### LIKE + -ING

You can use *like* with a noun (see Unit 2).

*I like chicken.* *I love it too.*

*I don't like chips.* *I love them.*

We can also talk about activities we like or don't like using the pattern **like + verb + -ing**.

I	like	
We	love	dancing.
They	don't like	playing music.
She/He	likes	doing yoga.
My son	loves	watching sport.
Pedro	doesn't like	



## -ing forms

-ing forms are regular.

verb	-ing form	verb (ends in -e)	-ing form
play	playing	dance	dancing
cook	cooking	live	living
walk	walking	drive	driving
read	reading	have	having

Some verbs have double letters when you write the -ing form.  
swim – swimming    run – running    travel – travelling

## Exercise 1

Complete the sentences with the -ing form of the verbs.

- I don't like cooking. I eat out a lot. (cook)
- I love \_\_\_\_\_ to music – especially electronic music. (listen)
- Jo uses the car more than me. I don't like \_\_\_\_\_. (drive)
- I like \_\_\_\_\_ cards. I play poker with some friends every Tuesday evening. (play)
- My husband doesn't like \_\_\_\_\_ shopping. I buy all his clothes. (go)
- I love \_\_\_\_\_. I went to South America with my girlfriend last year. (travel)
- My wife and I love \_\_\_\_\_ live sport. We have tickets to go to the next Olympics. (watch)
- My brother doesn't like \_\_\_\_\_ any green food! He eats a lot of meat. (eat)
- I don't like \_\_\_\_\_ in a flat, but houses are very expensive here. (live)
- I wanted a cat, but my parents didn't like \_\_\_\_\_ animals in our flat. (have)

## Questions and answers

Look at how we normally reply to these questions.

### Questions

<i>Do you like</i>	<i>playing games?</i>	<i>Does he like</i>	<i>dancing?</i>
	<i>cooking?</i>		<i>playing music?</i>
	<i>reading?</i>	<i>Does she like</i>	<i>doing yoga?</i>
	<i>it?</i>		<i>watching sport?</i>

### Answers

++	<b>Yes. / Yes, I do.</b>	++	<b>Yes. / Yes, he does.</b>
	<i>I love it. / It's great.</i>		<i>He loves it.</i>
+	<b>Yeah – a bit. / It's OK.</b>	+	<b>Yeah – a bit.</b>
–	<b>Not really.</b>	–	<b>Not really.</b>
--	<b>No. / No, I don't.</b>	--	<b>No. / No, he doesn't.</b>

## Exercise 2

Write questions and answers about liking activities.

- you / cook? ++  
A: *Do you like cooking?*  
B: *Yes. I love it.*
- your husband / cook? –  
A: *Does your husband like cooking?*  
B: *Not really.*
- you / swim? –
- you / watch TV? +
- your son / play football? –
- you / read? ++
- you / drive? –
- your sister / travel? +

## Did you like ...?

You can ask about events people went to with *Did you like ...?*

A: **Did you like** the film last night?

B: Yes. *It was great.*

A: How was the dinner? **Did you like** it?

B: Yeah. *It was OK.*

## Exercise 3

Complete with one word in each space. Contractions (*don't/didn't* etc.) are one word.

- A: \_\_\_\_\_ you like running?  
B: Yes. I often go running in the park.
- A: \_\_\_\_\_ you like the tour yesterday?  
B: Yeah, it was OK.
- A: Do you like \_\_\_\_\_ to the beach?  
B: Not really. I prefer swimming in a pool.
- A: Did you go to the cinema yesterday?  
B: Yes, but I \_\_\_\_\_ like the film. It was very slow.
- A: Do you do a lot of exercise?  
B: Yes. I walk a lot and I love \_\_\_\_\_ golf.
- A: Do you like learning English?  
B: Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_. I love \_\_\_\_\_!
- A: Did you like your presents?  
B: Yes. \_\_\_\_\_ were great!

## PRESENT CONTINUOUS (I'M AND ARE YOU ...?)

### Positive form

The present continuous is the present of *be* + -ing form.

Person	be	-ing form
I	'm	<i>reading a good book</i>
	am	<i>watching Narcos</i>
		<i>working hard</i>
		<i>now.</i>
		<i>at the moment.</i>

You can make a negative like this:

*I'm not reading anything at the moment.*

### Question form

Question	be + person	-ing form
		<i>listening to?</i>
What	are you	<i>reading?</i>
		<i>making?</i>
	Are you	<i>reading anything good at the moment?</i>

## Exercise 1

**A** Complete the sentences with *'m/am* or *'re/are*.

- A: What \_\_\_\_\_ you doing?  
B: Nothing much. I \_\_\_\_\_ waiting for a phone call.
- A: \_\_\_\_\_ you listening to the radio?  
B: No. You can turn it off.
- A: Can I turn on the TV?  
B: No. I \_\_\_\_\_ trying to do some work.
- A: I \_\_\_\_\_ making dinner now.  
B: OK. What \_\_\_\_\_ we having?  
A: Chicken curry.
- A: Are you on your own? What \_\_\_\_\_ your friends doing tonight?  
B: They \_\_\_\_\_ studying. There's an exam tomorrow.  
A: Why \_\_\_\_\_ you not studying?  
B: I am! I \_\_\_\_\_ having a break!



**B ▶ 210** Listen and check.**Other forms**

Here are the other forms of the present continuous. You study these more in Unit 8.

You/We/They	<b>are</b>	<i>coming now.</i>
She/He/It	<b>is</b>	<i>working.</i>
<b>Are</b>	<i>you/we/they</i>	<i>leaving now?</i>
<b>Is</b>	<i>she/he/it</i>	<i>working?</i>

**Exercise 2****A** Write questions in the present continuous with these words.

- you / work / now?  
*Are you working now?*
- What / you / look at?
- What / you / listen to?
- What / they / do?
- you / do / anything / now?
- you / come / with us?

**B** Write an answer to each question.**Present continuous v present simple**

We use **present continuous** for activities around **now** or **at the moment**. Actions in the present continuous **are not complete**.

We use **present simple** for **regular activities** (*always, usually, every day, etc.*).

*I'm watching* a good series called 'The City' at the moment. (I'm on episode 5 of 13)

*I watch* a lot of series. I **normally watch** something every night.

**Exercise 3**

Complete the pairs of sentences with the correct form of the verb. One sentence is present continuous and one sentence is present simple.

**listen**

- My wife \_\_\_\_\_ to a lot of classical music.
  - What \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ to? Can I listen to it?

**not read**

- I like reading, but I \_\_\_\_\_ anything at the moment. I'm very busy.
  - Children \_\_\_\_\_ a lot these days. They only look at their phones.

**work**

- I \_\_\_\_\_ this week, but I'm on holiday for the next two weeks.
  - My brother \_\_\_\_\_ in a bank. He likes it, but I think it's boring.

**go out**

- My friends and I usually \_\_\_\_\_ on Thursday evenings.
  - \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ tonight?

**do**

- I \_\_\_\_\_ English homework for an hour every day, if I can.
  - I \_\_\_\_\_ a course next week for my job.

**eat**

- What \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_? It looks horrible!
  - What \_\_\_\_\_ you normally \_\_\_\_\_ at breakfast?

**THIS/THESE, ONE/ONES****Singular**

Can I try **this** (one)?  
**This doesn't** look good.  
**This dress is** nice.  
The red **one** looks good.  
I prefer the blue **one**.

**Plural**

Can I try **these** (ones)?  
**These don't** look good.  
**These jeans are** OK.  
The blue **ones** are fine.  
I prefer these **ones**.

**Exercise 1**

Decide which sentence is wrong (a or b). Correct it.

- This shoes are very comfortable.
  - These jeans are very comfortable.
- What do you think of this shirt?
  - What do you think of jacket?
- These shirts are OK, but I'm not sure about the colour.
  - The brown coats are OK, but I don't like ones.
- This skirt look good.
  - This top doesn't look very good.
- I like the design on this T-shirt.
  - I like the design on these bag.
- I like this dress, but it's a bit short.
  - This dress is nice, but I prefer the red.

**REVISION****Exercise 1****A** Complete the conversation with one word in each space.

- A: What <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ you think of this dress?  
B: It's OK. I prefer the other <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.  
A: Which one? <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ one?  
B: Yes. I like the design.  
A: Really? I don't like <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. I'm going to buy this one.  
B: OK. It looks nice too.  
A: <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ you buying anything?  
B: No, I <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ just looking. I don't have any money.  
A: You do! You don't <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ spending money!  
B: That's right! And I don't like <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ shopping!

**B ▶ 211** Listen and check.**PRONUNCIATION****Exercise 2****A ▶ 212** Listen to the phrases. They are fast, then slow.

- are you
- do you
- did you

**B ▶ 213** Listen and choose the words you hear (a or b).

- are you
  - do you
- do you
  - did you
- are you
  - did you
- Are you going swimming?
  - Do you go swimming much?
- What do you like cooking?
  - What are you cooking?
- Where are you staying?
  - Where did you stay?



- 7 a What are you reading?  
b What do you read?
- 8 a Why do you like it?  
b Why did you like it?
- 9 a Do you like going to the cinema?  
b Did you go to the cinema?
- 10 a Do you like playing tennis?  
b Are you playing tennis later?
- 11 a When are you going?  
b When did you go?  
c When do you go?
- 12 a What are you doing?  
b What did you do?  
c What do you do?

### Exercise 3

▶ 214 Listen and write the sentences. Two words are given.

- |                 |                                 |
|-----------------|---------------------------------|
| 1 travelling a  | <i>I like travelling a lot.</i> |
| 2 listening to  | _____                           |
| 3 the moment    | _____                           |
| 4 anything good | _____                           |
| 5 think of      | _____                           |
| 6 prefer the    | _____                           |

## 8 HERE AND THERE

### PRESENT CONTINUOUS: ALL FORMS

The present continuous is the **present** of **be + -ing form**.  
(See also Units 5 and 7 *am/are + -ing*).

Person	be	-ing form
I	'm am	going out.
He		working hard.
She		staying with us.
My mum	's is	making dinner.
It		raining outside.
The work		taking a long time.
We		
You	're are	trying.
They		

### Negatives

I	'm not am not	waiting.
He		feeling well.
She	's not is not	working.
It		raining
We		
You	're not are not	listening.
They		

You can also say *isn't* and *aren't*.

The cash machine **isn't** working.

They **aren't** coming.

### Questions

<i>Is he feeling OK?</i>	<i>What's he doing?</i>
<i>Is she staying long?</i>	<i>Where's she staying?</i>
<i>Is it working now?</i>	<i>What time's she going?</i>
<i>Are you doing anything now?</i>	<i>What are you reading?</i>

### Remember

We use **present continuous** for plans and activities around **now** or **at the moment**. Actions in the present continuous **are not complete**. (see Units 5 and 7)

We use **present simple** for **regular activities** (*always, usually, every day*, etc). (see Unit 4)

### Exercise 1

Choose the correct form.

- 1 My car *doesn't / isn't* working at the moment.
- 2 *Is it / It is* raining outside?
- 3 My sister *teaching / is teaching* in China at the moment.
- 4 He's not here. He *takes / is taking* his son to school.
- 5 Sue's *not / Sue don't* coming with us.
- 6 What *he does / he's doing / is he doing* in Canada?
- 7 *He not working / He's not working / He doesn't work* at the moment. He needs a job.
- 8 Why *is she driving / she is driving / does she drive* there? She usually takes the train.

### Exercise 2

Complete the pairs of sentences with the correct form of the verbs. One sentence is present continuous, one sentence is present simple.

- 1 **rain**  
a: It \_\_\_\_\_ a lot here.  
b: Take a coat. It \_\_\_\_\_ outside again.
- 2 **work**  
a: My boss \_\_\_\_\_ from home this week.  
b: Usually she \_\_\_\_\_ four days a week: Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday and Friday.
- 3 **do**  
a: She \_\_\_\_\_ a Spanish course at the moment. She wants to go to Argentina.  
b: He \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of exercise: running, football and yoga.
- 4 **meet**  
a: I \_\_\_\_\_ my old school friends every month.  
b: I \_\_\_\_\_ a client in Manchester today.
- 5 **travel**  
a: He \_\_\_\_\_ a lot for work.  
b: We \_\_\_\_\_ to Singapore today for a business meeting.
- 6 **stay**  
a: She \_\_\_\_\_ with her parents for one or two days.  
b: He \_\_\_\_\_ late at work a lot – sometimes three or four days a week.



## Short answers

A: **Is** he feeling OK?

B: Yes, **he is**. / No, **he's not**.

A: **Is** it working now?

B: Yes, **it is**. / No, **it's not**.

A: **Is** she staying long?

B: Yes, **she is**. / No, **she's not**.

A: **Are** you working?

B: Yes, **I am**. / No, **I'm not**.

You can also use **isn't** instead of **'s not**.

No, **she/he/it isn't**.

## Exercise 3

### A Write a short answer to these questions.

- 1 Is it raining? (✓) Yes, **it is**.
- 2 Is he feeling OK? (X) No, **he's not**.
- 3 Is your mother working at the moment? ✓
- 4 Is he living with his parents again? ✓
- 5 Is your sister staying in Slovakia? X
- 6 Is the shop closing now? ✓
- 7 Are you going to the beach today? X
- 8 Is the train stopping here? ✓
- 9 Are you reading this? ✓
- 10 Is the cash machine working? X

### B ▶ 215 Listen and check.

## PERSONAL PRONOUNS

### Subject pronouns

**I** work in an office in the city centre.

**You're** right.

**He** works with my brother.

**She** teaches at a school near here.

**It's** a really good book.

**We** live in a small village.

**They** are good friends.

### Object pronouns

Can you take **me** to the airport?

Sorry. I can't help **you**.

My brother plays football with **him**.

I meet **her** for coffee every Friday.

I don't like **it**.

She's staying with **us** at the moment.

How do you know **them**?

## Exercise 1

Tick (✓) the correct sentence (a or b).

- 1 a: My mum and dad moved to Norway. They like it a lot.  
b: My mum and dad moved to Norway. **Them** like it a lot.
- 2 a: My son cooked dinner for us last night.  
b: My son cooked dinner for **we** last night.
- 3 a: My favourite singer is Tim Buckley. Do you know **he**?  
b: My favourite singer is Tim Buckley. Do you know **him**?
- 4 a: I like your shoes. Where did you buy **they**?  
b: I like your shoes. Where did you buy **them**?
- 5 a: My husband and I work from home. We make good money.  
b: My husband and I work from home. **They** make good money.

- 6 a: I like your jacket. Where did you buy **them**?  
b: I like your jacket. Where did you buy **it**?
- 7 a: When did you last see **she**?  
b: When did you last see **her**?
- 8 a: It's cold there. **Me** need to take a coat.  
b: It's cold there. I need to take a coat.

## Exercise 2

Complete the sentences with the missing pronouns.

- 1 I love American music. \_\_\_\_\_ is my favourite!
- 2 My brother lives in Amsterdam. \_\_\_\_\_ is a student.
- 3 I like her father, but he doesn't like \_\_\_\_\_. It's bad!
- 4 My friends love football, but I don't like \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 My parents are very old. \_\_\_\_\_ are retired now.
- 6 I'm going on holiday with my parents, but my sister isn't going to come with \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 I have a brother. \_\_\_\_\_ live in the same area. It's nice.
- 8 He has two brothers and three sisters, but he doesn't see \_\_\_\_\_ a lot.
- 9 That's my friend Julian and his wife. I know \_\_\_\_\_ very well, but I don't know \_\_\_\_\_.
- 10 This is my wife, Amy. \_\_\_\_\_ have a daughter, Clara. \_\_\_\_\_ is three.

## REVISION

### Exercise 1

Look at the example. Find five more sentences which are wrong. Correct them.

- 1 Do your sister working now? X *Is your sister working now?*
- 2 I like them. They helped us. ✓
- 3 What she's doing in Russia?
- 4 He's at the gym. He's doing some exercise.
- 5 I like your jeans. How much did them cost?
- 6 She's stay in the Hilton Hotel.
- 7 Who Anna talking to?
- 8 They helped us. I want to help them.
- 9 He not is working at the moment.
- 10 Rose isn't coming. We can start the meeting now.

## PRONUNCIATION

### Exercise 2

A ▶ 216 Listen and complete the sentences. They're fast.

- 1 She's cooking something nice for dinner.
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ Business at university.
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ OK?
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ basketball with some friends in the park.
- 5 I'm going \_\_\_\_\_ and they can \_\_\_\_\_ too.
- 6 He's in his room. He \_\_\_\_\_ TV.
- 7 What \_\_\_\_\_ at the moment? \_\_\_\_\_ working?
- 8 Can you talk \_\_\_\_\_? She doesn't \_\_\_\_\_.

B ▶ 217 Listen again and check. They're slow.



## 9 HEALTHY AND HAPPY

### TIME PHRASES FOR THE PAST

We use lots of different expressions to explain when things happened.

<i>a few days ago</i>	<i>last night</i>	<i>on Monday</i>
<i>a few weeks ago</i>	<i>last Friday</i>	<i>on Thursday</i>
<i>a few months ago</i>	<i>last week</i>	<i>on Saturday</i>
<i>a few years ago</i>	<i>last month</i>	<i>on Sunday</i>
<i>five minutes ago</i>	<i>last year</i>	
<i>three hours ago</i>		<i>today</i>
<i>four days ago</i>		<i>yesterday</i>
<i>two weeks ago</i>		<i>this morning</i>
<i>six months ago</i>		<i>this afternoon</i>
<i>ten years ago</i>		

Note: we can use *today*, *this morning* and *this afternoon* when the event is in the past.

#### Exercise 1

Complete the sentences. Use one word in each space.

- I hit my head \_\_\_\_\_ afternoon. It was bad. I went home.
- I went to Laos on holiday two years \_\_\_\_\_.
- I hurt my back \_\_\_\_\_ few weeks ago. It feels bad again today.
- I cut my hand \_\_\_\_\_ night.
- I broke my leg a \_\_\_\_\_ years ago. It happened in Switzerland.
- I saw him on the train \_\_\_\_\_ morning.
- She's coming. I saw her in the lift a few \_\_\_\_\_ ago.
- I didn't go to work \_\_\_\_\_ Monday. I had a bad cold.

#### Exercise 2

Put the expressions in order from 1 (= near to now) to 8 (= a long time ago).

It's now 7 in the evening on Saturday.

- last year
- this morning
- a few days ago
- this afternoon
- five years ago
- last night
- on Sunday
- last month

### QUANTITY

<i>There's</i>	<i>a lot of / lots of</i>	<i>money.</i>
<i>We have</i>	<i>quite a lot of</i>	<i>snow.</i>
	<i>some</i>	<i>clean water.</i>
<i>There are</i>	<i>almost no</i>	<i>women in government.</i>
<i>We have</i>	<i>no</i>	<i>holidays.</i>
		<i>good universities.</i>

#### Exercise 1

Rewrite the sentences. Change *We have* to *There's* or *There are*.

- We have lots of good restaurants in my town.  
*There are lots of good restaurants in my town.*
- We have quite a lot of good seafood in this area.
- We have no women in government.

- We have some beautiful countryside.
- We have lots of problems with the health system.
- We have almost no rain in the summer.
- We have some crime in the small towns, but not a lot.
- We have almost no museums in my city.

#### Exercise 2

Choose the correct word.

- There *is* / *are* quite a lot of hotels and restaurants near here.
- We have some *teacher* / *teachers* in the villages, but we need more.
- There *is* / *are* lots of men in government, but not a lot of *women* / *woman*.
- There's almost no clean *water* / *waters*.
- There *isn't* / *aren't* a lot of people in the mountains.
- They have a lot of very good *meat* / *meats* in this restaurant.
- I'm a student. I have a lot of free *time* / *times*.
- Some old people have almost no *education* / *educations*.

#### Exercise 3

Rewrite the sentences as negatives (–) or questions (?).

- You have a lot of universities. (?)
- There's a lot of rain most of the time. (–)
- There are a lot of police on the streets. (?)
- We have a lot of football teams in my city. (–)
- There's a lot of crime. (?)
- There are a lot of guns here. (–)

### REVISION

#### Exercise 1

Look at the time expressions. Choose the correct form.

- They went* / *They're going* to a great festival a few weeks ago.
- She took* / *She's going to take* an exam tomorrow.
- I went* / *I'm going* out with some friends three days ago.
- We visited* / *We're going to visit* the war museum next week.
- He played* / *He plays* / *He's going to play* basketball every week on Sunday.
- I watched* / *I'm watching* / *I'm going to watch* a film at the moment.
- She went* / *She goes* / *She's going* to the gym every day after work.
- He cooked* / *He's cooking* / *He's going to cook* a great dinner last night.

#### Exercise 2

Which five sentences are wrong? Correct them.

- It happened six or seven years ago.
- I cut my hand in Monday.
- There is lots of beautiful mountains near here.
- There are quite lots of problems here at the moment.
- The weather was horrible last week.
- She broke her arm before three weeks.
- There are some very good players in the team.
- It's usually hot in my country. We have almost not snow.



## PRONUNCIATION

### Exercise 3

**A ▶ 218** Listen and write the time expressions.

**They're fast.**

- 1 We had a lot of snow \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 The last World Cup was \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 I went to a great concert \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 They met in Paris \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 I bought it \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 It rained a lot \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 He cut his head \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8 What time did you get home \_\_\_\_\_?
- 9 We met at a conference \_\_\_\_\_.
- 10 It happened \_\_\_\_\_.

**B ▶ 219** Listen again and check. They're slow.

### Exercise 4

**▶ 220** Listen. Repeat the time expressions.

### Exercise 5

**▶ 221** Listen. Complete the sentences.

- 1 There \_\_\_\_\_ crime here.
- 2 We \_\_\_\_\_ winter in my country.
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ very cheap areas.
- 4 There \_\_\_\_\_ noise outside.
- 5 There \_\_\_\_\_ volcanoes here.
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_ mountains and lakes.
- 7 \_\_\_\_\_ grammar in my language.
- 8 \_\_\_\_\_ army in Iceland.

## 10 NEWS

## FUTURE: AM/ARE/IS GOING

### Plans and predictions

**Plans** (= someone already decided to do this):

*I'm going home now.*

*We're going to Rome for our holiday this summer.*

*She's going to an exhibition this evening.*

**Predictions** (= what I think is happening in the future)

*I'm not going to like it.*

*You're going to have fun.*

*The weather is going to be nice.*

### Exercise 1

**A** Complete the sentences with 'm/am, 're/are or 's/is.

Use contractions where you can.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ you going to be OK in that top? It's cold today.
- 2 They said on the news it \_\_\_\_\_ going to be 38 degrees here today.
- 3 They \_\_\_\_\_ going to lose the election.
- 4 I \_\_\_\_\_ not going to work for a month this summer. I need a holiday.
- 5 The house doesn't have heating. You \_\_\_\_\_ going to be cold in there.
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_ the weather going to be OK?
- 7 Look at the snow! There \_\_\_\_\_ going to be accidents on this road.
- 8 I \_\_\_\_\_ going camping with some friends this weekend.

**B ▶ 222** Listen and check.

### Exercise 2

Rewrite the sentences as negatives (–) or questions (?).

- 1 You're going to lose your job. (–)
- 2 I'm going to travel a lot this summer. (–)
- 3 You're going to Japan. (?)
- 4 They're going to drive there. (–)
- 5 They're going to university next year. (?)
- 6 We're going to meet Anya tonight. (?)

### Exercise 3

Write whole sentences. Use the words in brackets.

- 1 I / go to bed early tonight  
*I'm going to bed early tonight.*
- 2 I / not / have / time this weekend
- 3 What / you / wear to the party tonight
- 4 They / get married in June
- 5 We / travel there by train
- 6 Where / you / eat tonight

### Exercise 4

Match the questions (1–6) with the answers (a–f).

- 1 What are you doing tonight?
  - 2 Where are you going on holiday?
  - 3 What time are you going to leave?
  - 4 How long are you going to stay?
  - 5 Where are you going to stay?
  - 6 Is the weather going to be OK?
- a No. They said it's going to be cold and windy!  
b Poland. We're going to the Tatra mountains for a week.  
c We're going to a concert.  
d Not long. I'm going to fly home next Tuesday.  
e We're going to be at the Hilton in the city centre.  
f It's an early flight. We're going to get a taxi at 5!

## PAST FORMS REVIEW

Regular past forms end in -ed.

start – started  
finish – finished  
play – played  
talk – talked  
help – helped

For verbs that end in -e, just add -d to make the past simple.

like – liked  
change – changed  
use – used

Notice these spellings.

try – tried  
stop – stopped

Irregular past forms have no rules. You need to learn the words. See the verb list on page 138.

be – was/were  
go – went  
have – had  
do – did  
get – got  
win – won  
say – said



*I **didn't** have time. Sorry.*  
*You **didn't** try.*  
*We **didn't** win. We lost.*  
*They **didn't** help. It was horrible.*

Why **did** I do that?  
**Did** you see him?  
 Where **did** we **change** flights?  
**Did** they like it?

I <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (have) a great holiday. I <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (go) to Croatia for three weeks. I <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (spend) one week in Zagreb. I have friends there and I <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (stay) with them. It <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (be) very good to see them again. They <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (help) me find a cheap hotel in Split. I <sup>7</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (take) the train there. I <sup>8</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (meet) some great people in Split. We <sup>9</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (talk) a lot and they <sup>10</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (try) to pay for everything, but I <sup>11</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (say) no! I <sup>12</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ (come) home last Saturday.

- 1 It didn't cost a lot.
- 2 It didn't take a long time.
- 3 You didn't try very hard.
- 4 We didn't spend a lot of money.
- 5 We didn't win.
- 6 I didn't meet her.
- 7 He didn't come to class yesterday.
- 8 They weren't very happy about it.

be	have	open	see	start
die	like	rain	sleep	win

- 1 They \_\_\_\_\_ a new airport last May. It's great.
- 2 I'm tired. I \_\_\_\_\_ well last night.
- 3 The Popular Party \_\_\_\_\_ the election – again!
- 4 How \_\_\_\_\_ the fire \_\_\_\_\_?  
Do they know?
- 5 A: \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_  
Copenhagen?  
B: Yes. It was great.
- 6 A: \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ the  
news this morning?  
B: No. Why?
- 7 My grandmother \_\_\_\_\_ last year. She  
\_\_\_\_\_ cancer. It was horrible.
- 8 The weather in Corfu \_\_\_\_\_ great. It  
\_\_\_\_\_ for three weeks!

A: You in class last week. What happened?  
B: Oh. Sorry. I had a cold and I feel very well. I stayed in bed for three days.  
A: Oh no! I'm sorry.  
B: It's OK. I'm better now.  
A: We very busy. It a very good class. We do a lot of work.  
B: No?  
A: No. The teacher very well. She said she was tired.  
B: Maybe we had the same cold.  
A: Maybe.

1 you are  
2 we are  
3 they are  
4 there are

1 a they're b there are  
2 a they're b there are  
3 a you're b we're  
4 a we're b they're  
5 a you're b there are  
6 a You're going to take an exam next week.  
b We're going to take an exam next week.  
7 a We're going to have a lot of fun.  
b They're going to have a lot of fun.  
8 a They're going shopping later.  
b You're going shopping later.  
9 a They're going to win.  
b We're going to win.

To make questions, we use a form of *be*, *do* or *can*. When we use these verbs to make a question, they are called auxiliary verbs. Remember the word order.

	Question word	be, do, etc.	person noun	verb phrase
<b>Present be</b>	How old	are	you?	
	Where	is	she?	
<b>Present simple</b>	What	do	you	do?
	What time	does	it	finish?
<b>Present continuous</b>	How	are	we	getting there?
	Why	is	she	leaving?
<b>Past be</b>	How	was	the film?	
	Where	were	they?	
<b>Past simple</b>	How long	did	you	stay?
	How far	did	he	walk?
<b>Can</b>	How	can	I	help?
		Can	you	open the window?



## Exercise 1

Choose the correct auxiliary.

- 1 A: I'm going to the cinema later to see the new Bond film.  
B: What time *are / did* you going?  
B: Six. *Do / Can* you want to come?
- 2 A: I'm sorry. I can't see the screen. *Do / Can* you move a bit?  
B: Oh yeah, sorry. *Are / Is* that better?  
A: Yes, thanks.
- 3 A: *Do / Did* you have a nice weekend?  
B: Yes. It was great. We went walking in the countryside.  
A: How *did / was* the weather? It rained here.  
B: It rained a bit, but we didn't get very wet.
- 4 A: *Can / Are* you take us to the airport?  
B: I'm sorry, I can't. I don't have the car.  
A: Oh, don't worry. How much *does / is* a taxi?
- 5 A: This weather is horrible.  
B: I know. *Is / Was* it going to stay like this?  
A: I think so.  
B: *Are / Does* it normally rain a lot at this time of year?  
A: Yes, but not so much.
- 6 A: *Can / Are* you leaving now?  
B: Yes. *Are / Do* you coming?  
A: *Do / Can* you wait? I need to go to the toilet.  
B: Sure. I'll meet you outside.

## Exercise 2

Put each auxiliary in the correct place in these sentences. Use each word once.

are	do	did	was
can	does	is	were

- 1 A: What you do yesterday after the class?  
B: I just went home. And you?
- 2 A: You like playing computer games?  
B: Yeah, a bit. Why?
- 3 A: We're going to Panama for our holidays. Have you been there?  
B: No. What you going to see there?
- 4 A: I speak to you?  
B: Sure. What the problem?
- 5 A: I can get free tickets for the zoo. My girlfriend works there.  
B: What she do?  
A: She works in one of the cafés.
- 6 A: I went to the school's anniversary.  
B: Oh, yes? it good? there many people there?

There are other auxiliary verbs in *Outcomes Beginner*. You learn more about these in *Outcomes Elementary*.

*Could* you turn up the heating?  
What time *will* you be back?  
What *would* you like?  
*Have* you been there?

## Exercise 3

Correct the mistake in each question.

- 1 Did you went out last night?
- 2 Where live you?
- 3 Are you like swimming?
- 4 Can you to turn on the light?
- 5 Where do your friend Paola work?
- 6 Do you move, please?

## EXPLAINING WHEN: TIME PHRASES

We can add a phrase with *when*, *after* or *in* to show when something happens.

*I moved here **when** I was five.*  
*She went into the army **after** university.*  
*I started this job **after** I left school.*  
*He opened the restaurant **in** 2008.*

Remember we can also use *ago*. (see Unit 9)

*He opened the restaurant **10 years ago**.*

## Exercise 1

Complete the sentences with a past time phrase and the word or phrase in brackets.

- 1 My dad was born \_\_\_\_\_ *in 1932* \_\_\_\_\_. (1932)
- 2 My uncle started a business \_\_\_\_\_. (he left the army)
- 3 My sister got married \_\_\_\_\_. (she was 20)
- 4 I spent time in Italy \_\_\_\_\_. (2000s)
- 5 I met my girlfriend \_\_\_\_\_. (we were both at school)
- 6 They got divorced \_\_\_\_\_. (three years)
- 7 I normally go straight home \_\_\_\_\_. (class)
- 8 We normally kiss three times \_\_\_\_\_. (we say goodbye)

## Exercise 2

Complete the short text with one word in each space.

Nelson Mandela was South Africa's first black President. He was born <sup>1</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ 1918. He studied Law at university. <sup>2</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ university, he worked as a lawyer. He became interested in politics and started fighting the white-only government. <sup>3</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ 1962 he went to prison. <sup>4</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ he was there, people all over the world said he should be free, but the South African government said no. Finally, it happened <sup>5</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ 27 years. <sup>6</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ he left prison, he became the president. He was president for five years. He died <sup>7</sup>\_\_\_\_\_ December 2013.

## EXPLAINING WHY: BECAUSE AND SO

*Because* and *so* show why something happens/happened.

We use *because* to describe the cause of something. We put *because* before explaining why.

*We visited Machu Picchu **because** we are studying the Incas at university.*

We use *so* to describe the result of something. We put *so* after explaining why.

*We are studying the Incas at university, **so** we visited Machu Picchu.*

Notice we need a comma (,) before *so*.

## Exercise 1

Choose the best word.

- 1 There are a lot of famous places to visit *because / , so* we get a lot of tourists.
- 2 The weather is very bad in February *because / , so* it's not a good time to visit.
- 3 The castle is closed at the moment *because / , so* they are doing repairs.
- 4 There was a war here in the 16th century. It started *because / , so* the king died and he didn't have any children.
- 5 There was a war *because / , so* a lot of people left the country.
- 6 There is a lot of crime in that area *because / , so* I don't walk round there at night.
- 7 The health system here is bad *because / , so* the government doesn't spend enough money.
- 8 I send my children to a private school *because / , so* public education is very bad.



## Exercise 2

### A Match 1–8 with a–e to make complete sentences.

- 1 Most people like working at home because
  - 2 Some people think working from home is bad because
  - 3 I didn't feel very well, so
  - 4 I didn't like the hotel because
  - 5 My friend is going to be in town, so
  - 6 The government lost the election, so
  - 7 I was really late because
  - 8 The school was closed when the fire happened, so
- a I went to bed early.
  - b no-one was hurt.
  - c there's going to be a new president.
  - d you don't see anyone all day.
  - e there was a lot of noise outside.
  - f they don't need to travel to work.
  - g we're going to have dinner together.
  - h there was a lot of traffic.

### B Choose five sentences from 1–8 in Part A. Write them with a different ending.

## REVISION

### Exercise 1

Complete the conversations with a pair of words.

are + after	can + after	did + in	is + when
are + so	did + because	<del>did + so</del>	when + did

- 1 A: Why did people stop living in Petra?  
B: I'm not sure. It's very dry there, so maybe it was difficult to grow food.
- 2 A: When did Brasília become the capital of Brazil?  
B: I'm not sure. It was in the 1960s, I think.
- 3 A: Why did you move here?  
B: I got a new job.
- 4 A: When are you going to the shops?  
B: at lunch. Do you need anything?
- 5 A: Was that you in the photo?  
B: Yes. That was probably ten years ago, when I had hair!
- 6 A: What are you doing this weekend?  
B: I have exams next week, so I need to study.
- 7 A: Can I ask you something about my homework?  
B: Sure. But not the class.
- 8 A: I broke my foot when I was on holiday.  
B: Oh, no! How did you do that?

## PRONUNCIATION

### Exercise 2

#### A ▶ 225 Listen to how the letters in red sound together.

- 1 when I was there
- 2 when I'm tired
- 3 when I need it
- 4 after I left her.
- 5 in a minute
- 6 in a few weeks

#### B ▶ 225 Listen again and repeat the phrases.

## Exercise 3

### ▶ 226 Listen and complete the sentences.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ help me \_\_\_\_\_?
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ weather \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ happened \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ the car \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ there \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_ angry \_\_\_\_\_.

## 12 THANK YOU AND GOODBYE

### I'll

We offer solutions to problems using *I'll (I will) + verb*.

We sometimes add a time word or check it's OK using *if you like* or *if you want*.

#### Verb

*help you.*

*order a taxi.*

*I'll come with you, if you like.*

*go and get some food.*

### Exercise 1

Complete the offer with *I'll* and a verb.

go and look for	make	stand	take
lend	pay	stay	wash

- 1 You sit there. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 You don't need to walk. \_\_\_\_\_ you there.
- 3 You don't need any money. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 You go. \_\_\_\_\_ here and wait.
- 5 You don't need an umbrella. \_\_\_\_\_ you mine.
- 6 You wait here and see if he comes back. \_\_\_\_\_ him.
- 7 You don't need to bring any food. \_\_\_\_\_ something.
- 8 Don't worry about the dirty dishes. \_\_\_\_\_ them up.

### Exercise 2

Add *'ll* in the correct place in the sentences. You need one in each conversation 1–6.

- 1 A: I don't have room for everyone in my car.  
B: It's OK. I walk. It's only fifteen minutes.
- 2 A: I meet you at the restaurant at nine.  
B: OK. See you there.
- 3 A: It's OK. I clean everything.  
B: Are you sure? I can help, if you like.
- 4 A: I'm going to Switzerland next week.  
B: Lucky you. I love Switzerland – especially their chocolate.  
A: Yeah. I bring you some, if you like.
- 5 A: How much is that?  
B: It's OK. I buy it.  
A: I have money.  
B: It's fine.
- 6 A: Oh. We don't have any bread.  
B: I go and get some now.  
A: It's OK. I'm going to the shops later.



## EXPLAINING PURPOSE: FOR OR TO

We explain the purpose of something using *for* and *to*.

### for + noun

The doctor gave me this **for my headache**.  
I bought a sofa **for our living room**.  
It's a game **for children**.

### to + verb

The doctor gave me something **to feel better**.  
I bought her some flowers **to say thank you**.  
Do you want something **to eat**?

### Exercise 1

Complete the two patterns with these phrases.

an appointment	meet Mr Hassan
check out	Sylvia's birthday party
collect a computer	the conference
help you	work and pleasure

I'm here for ...

I'm here to ...

_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

### Exercise 2

Choose the best ending and add *for* or *to*.

- I'm going to the bank ... \_\_\_\_\_ a change.  
\_\_\_\_\_ **to** get some money.
- We're going out later ... \_\_\_\_\_ dinner.  
\_\_\_\_\_ watch TV.
- They gave us flowers ... \_\_\_\_\_ our anniversary.  
\_\_\_\_\_ help.
- I bought him some chocolates ... \_\_\_\_\_ lunch.  
\_\_\_\_\_ say thanks.
- The school needs help ... \_\_\_\_\_ their birthday.  
\_\_\_\_\_ buy desks.
- The government wants money ... \_\_\_\_\_ schools.  
\_\_\_\_\_ say sorry.

### Exercise 3

Make questions with these words.

- we / need anything / make dinner?  
*Do we need anything to make dinner?*
- you / have anything / headaches?
- you / need anyone / help you?
- you know / anywhere nice / a picnic?
- there / any nice places / children?
- who / the best person / ask?
- what / you / getting her / her birthday?

## TELLING PEOPLE TO DO THINGS: IMPERATIVES

You can tell people to do things using the infinitive of the verb (without *to*) and you can tell people not to do something using *don't* + infinitive. This is called an imperative.

### Positive

A: **Give us a call when you're home.**  
B: **I will.**

### Negative

A: **Don't forget to call us.**  
B: **I won't.**

You can promise to do something by saying *I will*.

You can promise *not* to do something by saying *I won't*.

You can also reply with *Yes / OK*.

### Exercise 1

Complete the sentences with the imperatives of these verbs. You sometimes need a negative.

be	forget	have	send	tell
----	--------	------	------	------

- 1 **Don't be** late
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ him you're sorry.
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ to call him.
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ a safe journey.
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ me an email.

be	have	hurry	say	wait
----	------	-------	-----	------

- 6 \_\_\_\_\_ a nice day.
- 7 \_\_\_\_\_ quick! We're late already.
- 8 \_\_\_\_\_ We have lots of time.
- 9 \_\_\_\_\_ for me. I'll be very quick.
- 10 \_\_\_\_\_ anything. Nobody else knows.

### Exercise 2

Complete with *will* or *won't*.

- 1 A: Don't forget to bring your book next time.  
B: I \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 A: Say hi to Diego.  
B: We \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 A: Tell me if you need help.  
B: I \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 A: Don't start without me.  
B: OK, we \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 A: Don't wait for us. Go and get a good seat.  
A: OK. We \_\_\_\_\_ See you later.

## REVISION

### Exercise 1

A Complete the conversation with these words.

be	don't	for	I'll	say	will
don't	for	have	I'll	to	won't

- A: So, Ivan. It was lovely to meet you.  
B: You too, Fei.  
A: Thanks <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ everything.  
B: It was a pleasure.  
A: I made you something <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ remember our time together!  
B: Oh, what lovely photos! Thanks!  
A: That's OK. It's been great.  
B: I'm going to put them on the wall in our kitchen.  
A: I'm happy you like them.  
B: <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ help you put your bags in the taxi.  
A: Oh, <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ careful! <sup>5</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ hurt your back!  
B: Wow – they are heavy! What do you have in there?  
A: I bought a lot of gifts <sup>6</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ my family.  
B: Yes – a lot! So, Fei. Stay in contact. <sup>7</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ forget us!  
A: I <sup>8</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.  
B: <sup>9</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ a good journey.  
A: I hope so. <sup>10</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ call you from home.  
B: OK. <sup>11</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ hi to your family.  
A: I <sup>12</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.  
B: Bye now.  
A: Bye.



**B ▶ 227** Listen and check.

## PRONUNCIATION

### Exercise 2

**A ▶ 228** Listen. Notice how you *don't* hear the red letters in these phrases.

- 1 don't forget
- 2 don't wait
- 3 don't be
- 4 next time
- 5 can't drive
- 6 a bit broken
- 7 not very
- 8 want to
- 9 go and get
- 10 go and see
- 11 come and visit
- 12 fish and chips
- 13 a good journey
- 14 a good place
- 15 send someone
- 16 need to

**B ▶ 228** Listen again and repeat.

### Exercise 3

**▶ 229** Listen and complete the sentences.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ call them.
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ to drink.
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ look at it.
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ I'll do it later.
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ for lunch?
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_ and chips.



# REGULAR AND IRREGULAR VERBS

Present	Past simple	-ing form	Present	Past simple	-ing form
add	added	adding	move	moved	moving
ask	asked	asking	need	needed	needing
be	was	being	offer	offered	offering
become	became	becoming	open	opened	opening
break	broke	breaking	pay	paid	paying
build	built	building	play	played	playing
buy	bought	buying	prefer	preferred	preferring
can	could	—	put	put	putting
change	changed	changing	read	read	reading
choose	chose	choosing	remember	remembered	remembering
come	came	coming	run	ran	running
continue	continued	continuing	see	saw	seeing
cost	cost	costing	sell	sold	selling
cut	cut	cutting	send	sent	sending
die	died	dying	show	showed	showing
do	did	doing	sing	sang	singing
drink	drank	drinking	sit	sat	sitting
drive	drove	driving	sleep	slept	sleeping
eat	ate	eating	speak	spoke	speaking
feel	felt	feeling	spend	spent	spending
find	found	finding	stand	stood	standing
get	got	getting	start	started	starting
give	gave	giving	stay	stayed	staying
go	went	going	stop	stopped	stopping
grow	grew	growing	study	studied	studying
happen	happened	happening	swim	swam	swimming
have	had	having	take	took	taking
hear	heard	hearing	talk	talked	talking
help	helped	helping	teach	taught	teaching
hit	hit	hitting	tell	told	telling
hold	held	holding	think	thought	thinking
hurt	hurt	hurting	throw	threw	throwing
keep	kept	keeping	travel	travelled	travelling
know	knew	knowing	try	tried	trying
learn	learned or learnt	learning	turn	turned	turning
leave	left	leaving	understand	understood	understanding
lend	lent	lending	use	used	using
like	liked	liking	wait	waited	waiting
live	lived	living	walk	walked	walking
look	looked	looking	want	wanted	wanting
lose	lost	losing	watch	watched	watching
love	loved	loving	wear	wore	wearing
make	made	making	win	won	winning
mean	meant	meaning	work	worked	working
meet	met	meeting	write	wrote	writing













# VOCABULARY REFERENCE

## COUNTRIES AND COUNTRY ADJECTIVES

Country	Country adjective	Capital
 Argentina	Argentinian	Buenos Aires
 Brazil	Brazilian	Brasília
 Chile	Chilean	Santiago
 China	Chinese	Beijing
 Colombia	Colombian	Bogotá
 France	French	Paris
 Italy	Italian	Rome
 Japan	Japanese	Tokyo
 Mexico	Mexican	Mexico City
 Morocco	Moroccan	Rabat
 Peru	Peruvian	Lima
 Poland	Polish	Warsaw
 Russia	Russian	Moscow
 Saudi Arabia	Saudi	Riyadh
 South Korea	Korean	Seoul
 Spain	Spanish	Madrid
 Thailand	Thai	Bangkok
 The UK	British	London
 The US / The States	American	Washington D.C.
 Vietnam	Vietnamese	Hanoi

## COLOURS

	black
	blue
	brown
	green
	grey
	pink
	orange
	purple
	red
	white
	yellow
	dark blue
	light blue

## DATES

Months	Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday	Thursday	Friday	Saturday	Sunday
January	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
February	the first	the second	the third	the fourth	the fifth	the sixth	the seventh
March	8	9	10	11	12	13	14
April	the eighth	the ninth	the tenth	the eleventh	the twelfth	the thirteenth	the fourteenth
May	15	16	17	18	19	20	21
June	the fifteenth	the sixteenth	the seventeenth	the eighteenth	the nineteenth	the twentieth	the twenty-first
July	22	23	24	25	26	27	28
August	the twenty-second	the twenty-third	the twenty-fourth	the twenty-fifth	the twenty-sixth	the twenty-seventh	the twenty-eighth
September	29	30	31				
October	the twenty-ninth	the thirtieth	the thirty-first				
November							
December							

## YEARS

1850	eighteen fifty	1901	nineteen oh one	1700	seventeen hundred
1800–1899	the 19th Century	2000–2099	the 21st Century	1900	nineteen hundred
1993	nineteen ninety-three	2005	two thousand and five	2000	the year two thousand
1900–1999	the 20th Century	2010	twenty ten		



PRONOUNS

		Person	Thing	Place
		<b>who</b>	<b>what</b> <b>which</b>	<b>where</b>
every / all		<b>everybody</b> <b>everyone</b>	<b>everything</b>	<b>everywhere</b>
no / none		<b>nobody</b> <b>no-one</b>	<b>nothing</b>	<b>nowhere</b>
any		anybody anyone	anything	<b>anywhere</b>
a or an (one not specific)		<b>somebody</b> <b>someone</b>	<b>something</b>	<b>somewhere</b>
the (specific)		he, she, etc. him, her, etc.	it one/ones	
near			this/these	here
far			that/those	there

LETTERS AND SOUNDS

Consonant sounds

Letter(s)	Most common sound → less common		
<b>B b</b>	/b/	silent	
	baby husband brother bad	lamb	
<b>C c</b>	/k/	/s/	
	coffee doctor o'clock cut	city price juice nice	
<b>Ch ch</b>	/tʃ/	/k/	
	lunch teacher children choose	school	

Letter(s)	Most common sound → less common		
<b>D d</b>	/d/	/t/	
	don't drink food student	asked talked	
<b>F f</b>	/f/	/v/	
	father flat fifty wife	of	
<b>G g</b>	/g/	/ŋ/	/dʒ/
	good give big English	long anything listening reading	orange page large village



Letter(s)	Most common sound → less common	
<b>gh</b>	silent	
	right	
	daughter	
	eighty	
<b>H h</b>	high	
	/h/	
	hi	
	have	
<b>J j</b>	how	
	husband	
	/dʒ/	
	job	
<b>K k</b>	juice	
	Japan	
	/k/	silent
	drink	
<b>L l</b>	milk	know
	take	knew
	kitchen	
	/l/	/ɔl/
<b>M m</b>	like	people
	listen	single
	flat	table
	village	
<b>N n</b>	/m/	
	meet	
	I'm	
	milk	
<b>P p</b>	mum	
	/n/	/ŋ/
	in	ring
	new	long
<b>Ph ph</b>	not	reading
	seventy	working
	/p/	
	page	
<b>Qu qu</b>	people	
	repeat	
	map	
	/f/	
<b>X x</b>	photo	
	phone	
	/kw/	
	question	
<b>Y y</b>	quite	
	quiet	
	square	

Letter(s)	Most common sound → less common		
<b>R r</b>	/r/		
	right		
	red		
	drink		
<b>S s</b>	sorry		
	/s/	/z/	/ʃ/
	seven	is	
	listen	was	discussion
<b>Sh sh</b>	class	plays	
	cakes		
	/ʃ/		
	she		
<b>T t</b>	shop		
	fresh		
	English		
	/t/	/ʃ/	silent
<b>Th th</b>	time	station	listen
	tea	action	castle
	twenty	national	soft drink
	hot	dictionary	don't know
<b>V v</b>	/ð/	/θ/	
	the	three	
	that's	thanks	
	mother	sixteenth	
<b>W w</b>	with	south	
	/v/		
	five		
	have		
<b>Wh wh</b>	never		
	very		
	/w/	silent	
	we	two	
<b>X x</b>	with	answer	
	twelve		
	flower		
	/w/	/h/	
<b>Y y</b>	what	who	
	when	whole	
	why		
	white		
<b>Z z</b>	/ks/		
	six		
	taxi		
	expensive		
<b>Y y</b>	next		
	/j/		
	yes		
	you		
<b>Y y</b>	your		
	yellow		



# Vowel sounds

Letter(s)	Most common sound → less common						
	/æ/	/eɪ/	/ə/	/e/	/ɔɪ/	/ɒ/	/ɑː/
<b>A a</b>	black have that can	same plane station conversation	a again abroad another	any anything many	water always talk	want	can't
	/eɪ/	/eə/	/e/	/ɪ/			
<b>ai</b>	email waiter train wait	pair air fair	again said	mountain			
	/eɪ/	/e/					
<b>ay</b>	day play way	says					
	/ɑː/	/eə/					
<b>ar</b>	are large far	area care					
	/e/	silent	/ɪ/	/iː/	/ə/		
<b>E e</b>	ten help fresh very	five name talked played	English wanted decided chooses	he she people email	the listen		
	/iː/						
<b>ee</b>	three meet week see						
	/iː/	/eɪ/	/e/	/ɪə/			
<b>ea</b>	tea teacher leave please	break great	weather breakfast	idea area			
	/ɜː/	/ə/	/eə/				
<b>er</b>	person were verb	sister answer enter	there where				
	/ɪə/	/ɜː/	/eə/				
<b>ear</b>	near year	learn early	wear				
	/ɪ/	/aɪ/					
<b>I i</b>	is in six drink	I nine price right					
	/i/	/juː/	/e/				
<b>ie</b>	cities countries companies	view review	friend				
	/ə/						
<b>io(n)</b>	question dictionary station discussion						



Letter(s)	Most common sound → less common				
	/ɒ/	/əʊ/	/ʌ/	/uː/	/ə/
<b>O o</b>	hot not c <u>o</u> nv <u>o</u> sation s <u>o</u> rry	both don't clo <u>o</u> thes c <u>o</u> ld	bro <u>o</u> ther do <u>o</u> s L <u>o</u> ndon s <u>o</u> n	do to who	d <u>o</u> you t <u>o</u> work
	/uː/	/ʊ/	/ɔː/		
<b>oo</b>	food too choose school	good look book	floor		
	/aʊ/	/uː/	/ʌ/	/ə/	/ʊ/
<b>ou</b>	house south about mountain	you group	country	famous continuous	would could
	/əʊ/	/ɔː/			
<b>oa</b>	road coat soap goal	board abroad			
	/ɔɪ/				
<b>oi</b>	point toilet				
	/əʊ/	/aʊ/			
<b>ow</b>	know show window own	how now towel shower			
	/ɔɪ/				
<b>oy</b>	boy toy enjoy				
	/ɔː/	/ə/	/ɜː/		
<b>or</b>	more or for	actor doctor for you	work		
	/ɔː/	/aʊə/	/ɑː/		
<b>our</b>	four your tour	hour	our		
	/ʌ/	/uː/	/ʊ/	/ə/	/ɪ/
<b>U u</b>	number bus husband lunch	student university use	full put	medium	minute
	/ɪ/	/uː/			
<b>ui</b>	build building	juice fruit			
	/aɪ/				
<b>uy</b>	buy				
	/aɪ/	/i/	/ɪ/		
<b>y</b>	my try	very thirty city	system		



# INFORMATION FILES

## FILE 1

Unit 1 page 9 DEVELOPING CONVERSATIONS



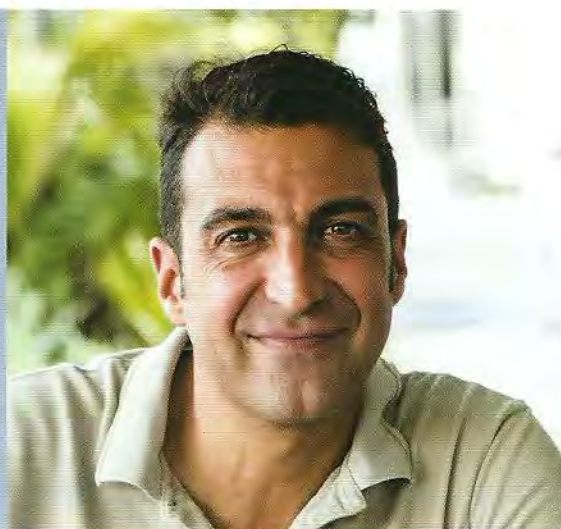
## FILE 2

Unit 8 page 75 READING AND SPEAKING

Student B

### Higor

I'm a teacher – and I work hard! Three days a week, I teach English and Spanish in a school here in Curitiba, in the south of Brazil. The other three days a week, I sometimes work at home and sometimes in the city. I teach lots of people in big companies. At home, I teach online. It's not difficult. I have a small office and a good computer. I love people and I love my job, but working at home is best. It's quiet. I can relax. I don't need to travel. The traffic here is bad. Sometimes it takes an hour to get to my school. At home, I can use this time to do other things. At the moment, I'm making my own website. It's going to be great.





FILE 3

Unit 1 page 12 VOCABULARY

Student B

Ask the prices. Complete the menu.

MENU			
			
	Large	Medium	Small
<b>Hot drinks</b>			
cappuccino	_____	3.40	2.90
latte	3.75	3.40	2.90
americano	3.10	_____	_____
espresso	2.05	_____	_____
tea	2.25	1.95	1.60
<b>Cold drinks</b>			
fresh orange juice	4.35	3.95	3.45
Coke	_____		
water	1.35		
<b>Food</b>			
cakes	_____	sandwiches	6.50

FILE 4

Unit 7 page 64 GRAMMAR

Student A

Act one of these activities:

- listening to music
- doing my homework
- looking at Facebook

FILE 5

Unit 10 page 93 READING AND SPEAKING

Pair A

- 1 Bayern Munich won the German Cup yesterday. They won two-nil (2–0) against Dortmund. Coman scored in the first half and Joshua Kimmich scored the second goal in the 76th minute.
- 2 The government is going to spend \$3 billion more on the health system next year. The money is going to pay for new hospitals and doctors. At the moment people are waiting a long time to have operations. The government is going to spend less on education and the environment.

FILE 6

Unit 4 page 35 GRAMMAR

Student A





## FILE 7

Unit 4 page 35 GRAMMAR

Student B

B



## FILE 8

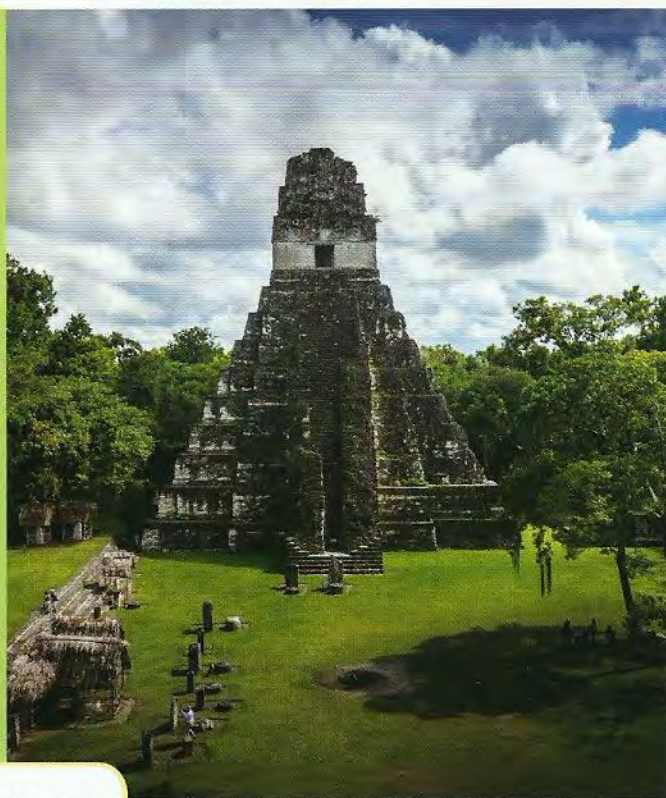
Unit 11 page 103 READING AND SPEAKING

Pair B

### TIKAL

Tikal is an ancient Mayan city in the jungle of Guatemala. It became a big city 2,000 years ago after Yax Ehb Xook became its first king, but there were many buildings before then. For eight centuries it was the capital of Mayan culture and, in 750 CE, 60,000–90,000 people lived there. During this time, the Mayans built many temples and pyramids for their religion. They put their kings and queens in these pyramids after they died. Some of the temples are about sixty or seventy metres high. The people of Tikal often fought with other cities and, around the year 800 CE, Tikal lost a big war. After the war, the city became less important. People left the area because it was difficult to grow food and from the tenth century nobody lived there. The city became lost.

People found the city again in the 19th century. Tikal is now part of the Tikal National Park. The park has 360 km<sup>2</sup> (square kilometres) of jungle. There are hundreds of different kinds of birds and three thousand ancient Mayan buildings. In 1979 the city of Tikal became a UNESCO world heritage site.



jungle = a kind of forest



## FILE 9

Unit 11 page 103 READING AND SPEAKING

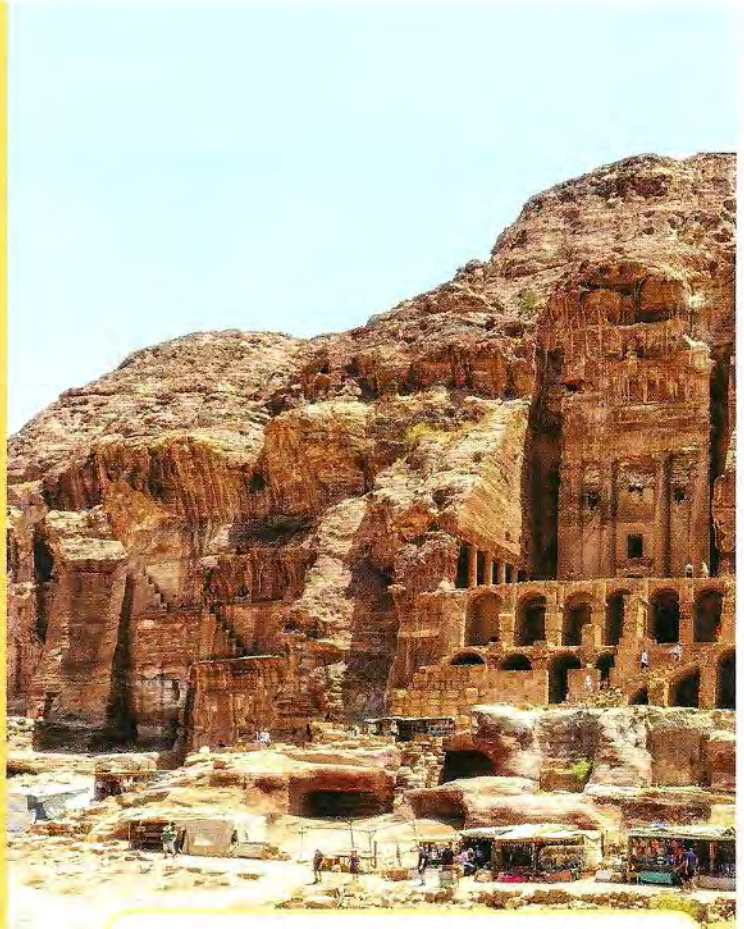
Pair A

### PETRA

The ancient city of Petra is in the desert in Jordan. It became an important city around 2,000 years ago, but there were many buildings before then. It was the capital city for people called the Nabataeans. The Nabataeans travelled a lot to buy and sell things. They became rich and built houses and temples in the rock. Some of these buildings are forty metres high. About 20,000 people lived in the city. In the second century the Roman army came to Petra and the Romans became the government.

For the next three centuries it stayed an important city. In 363 CE there was a big earthquake. The earthquake killed many people and damaged a lot of houses. After the earthquake people continued living in Petra but the city became less important. The Romans stopped using the city. People left the area, maybe because it was difficult to grow food. It's also possible a lot of people died in a flood. By the 8th century nobody lived there. The city became lost.

People found the city again in the 19th century. Petra is now a national park. 700,000 people visit the area every year. In 1985 Petra became a UNESCO world heritage site. In 1989 it was in one of Steven Spielberg's Indiana Jones films.



earthquake = when the ground moves suddenly

## FILE 10

Unit 7 page 64 GRAMMAR

### Student B

Act one of these activities:

- reading
- making a cake
- writing some emails

## FILE 11

Unit 10 page 93 READING AND SPEAKING

### Pair B

- 1 There was a very big fire in a school in Madrid yesterday. The fire happened in the evening. The school was closed, so no-one was hurt. They say the school is going to be closed for a year. Police think it was an accident.
- 2 Lesser's is a big clothes company. 10,000 people work for the company in Europe, but now the company is losing money. It's going to close one factory in Romania and thirteen shops in different countries. Maybe 3,000 people are going to lose their jobs.